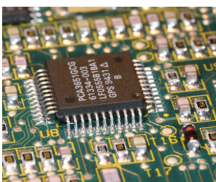


The CLEANSING

Robert Mare



The
CLEANSING

Robert Mare

Copyright (c) 2019
by
Robert Kubala

All rights reserved.

This is a work of fiction. Names and characters used, and incidents portrayed, are the product of the authors imagination. These and locations are used fictitiously. Any resemblance to actual persons, organizations, or events is coincidental.

Printing: 6 August 2024

Warnings!

“Power corrupts; absolute power corrupts absolutely.”

“Patience is a ~~virtue~~ often stupidity.”

“What you don’t know, ~~can~~ can hurt you.”

“Those who sow the wind ~~shall~~ might reap the whirlwind.”

“Regarding, the best laid plans of mice and men ...”

“~~And~~ Only the ~~mee~~ smart shall inherit the Earth.”

Table of Contents

TOUGH TIMES.....	11
Young Couple; Transition Office, 2037.....	12
Couple Takes the Bait, 2037.....	13
Sky is Seduced by James, 2037.....	18
Sky is Given a Tour of SF, 2037.....	19
Sky Pregnant; Future Agreed Upon, 2037.....	21
Husband Learns of Divorce, 2037.....	23
Sky, James, Small Talk, 2037.....	24
Why Do We Deserve This? 2037.....	27
TIMES THEY WERE A CHANGING.....	30
Legitimate Wealth, 1970.....	31
Henrietta and John, 1983.....	32
A Proposition, 1983.....	34
Margret is Born, 1984.....	38
Jackson Hole, Round of Golf, 1990.....	39
KGB Headquarters, 1991.....	39
Trapper Enjoys Katya, 1991.....	42
Kolya Rescues Katya, 1991.....	43
Tennis Court Talk, 1991.....	45
Margret & Ted, 2009.....	48
James is Born, 2010.....	49
Amazon Automation Rush, 2017.....	49

Worry About the 99%; Wash. DC, 2020.....	50
Wall Street Buys Farm, 2020.....	52
Public Spaces Monitored in Depth, 2021.....	54
First Fully Automated Farm, 2023.....	55
Citizen Spies, 2023.....	57
NSA DB of Gun Owners, 2023.....	59
Automation Worries Investors, 2025.....	61
ARI is Established, 2026.....	62
Organized ATM Heist, 2027.....	67
Buying the NW Side of Chicago, 2027.....	71
West Wing, Gun Restrictions, 2028.....	73
Summary of Interior Affairs, 2028.....	76
Farms Purchased by Wall Street, 2028.....	78
Speech to Police Superintendents, 2028.....	80
Lubinskis' Retire in Mexico, 2029.....	83
Chicago Police in Action, 2029.....	85
How Can This Be? 2029.....	87
Crackdown On Gun Owners, 2030.....	88
New Voting System, 2030.....	92
Investors Contemplate the Future, 2031.....	93
Chicago City State, 2033.....	96
Lobbing for City State Handouts, 2035.....	97
City State Investor's Tour, 2036.....	99
Anna Goes Shopping, 2036.....	102
Policeman's Job – 99% Boredom, 1% Terror. .	104
Emergency Room, 2036.....	105
Andy Recovers, 2036.....	106
Team Anna and Andy, 2036.....	110

Andy and Anna Discuss the Vials, 2036.....	111
A Meeting in Langley, Virginia, 2036.....	113
POSITIONING FOR THE NWO.....	118
Homeless Camp, 2037.....	119
Jeff's Place, 2037.....	120
Jeff's Plan, 2037.....	123
North Shore, 2038.....	126
State of the People, 2040.....	128
Who Gets the Automation? 2040.....	129
Organized Resistance, 2040.....	132
Resistance Cell 007, 2040.....	132
The Cleansing General Plan, 2042.....	135
Weapons Owners, Final Warning, 2042.....	140
A Raid, 2043.....	141
Rick and Denise, 2043.....	144
The Next Day, 2043.....	146
Rick's General Plan, 2043.....	149
Heavy Mfg & Automation, 2043.....	150
Doctor & Patient, 2043.....	152
Choosing the Chosen, 2043.....	154
Report on the Insurgency, 2043.....	159
Boost to the Economy, 2043.....	162
Barbara & Lester, 2043.....	162
James & Benjamin, 2043.....	165
James & Sky Talk, 2043.....	168
This Changes Everything, 2044.....	169

Chinese Study, US Doctors, 2044.....	173
A Democracy Experiment, 2044.....	175
Review of the Democracy Project, 2044.....	177
The Aldrens Meet the Michners, 2045.....	179
Heavy Military Space Lift, 2045.....	188
Chinese Bio Program, 2045.....	188
Mega Church Revealed, 2047.....	189
Hidden Moves, 2047.....	194
Ruling Class Debacle, 2049.....	196
Order to Implement, 2049.....	199
Some Men Want to See You, 2049.....	200
Rural Gun Owner Crackdown, 2049.....	202
Greg’s First Time, 2052.....	203
CIA Report on US vs. China, 2053.....	207
Chinese Visit James’s Family, 2053.....	209
Bio Attack Protection, 2053.....	215
Needle Work – Immunization, 2053.....	216
The Third Saturday, 2053.....	217
Doctor’s Son Johnathon, 2053.....	218
Husband is Told, 2053.....	220
A Criminal Network is Destroyed, 2053.....	221
Elite of US, China Meet, 2053.....	224
US-Chinese Shared Cities, 2053.....	231
Agreement with the Chinese, 2053.....	233
International Visit to US Biology, 2053.....	237
Most Programmers Obsolete, 2054.....	238
Visit to the Transition Office, 2054.....	239
Stockpiling of Metals, Etc. 2054.....	240

Choices Must be Made, 2054.....	242
THE CLEANSING 2054-55.....	244
An Incident in Orlando, June, 2054.....	245
A Small Vial, June, 2054.....	245
Sudan, a Deadly New Virus, July, 2054.....	246
A Young Boy Dies, July, 2054.....	247
CIA Verifies Virus, July, 2054.....	249
Jeff is Betrayed – Again, July, 2054.....	250
China Reacts, July, 2054.....	252
Russia Reacts, July, 2054.....	254
Europe Reacts, July, 2054.....	254
Spreads: Africa, Middle-East, August, 2054....	255
Criminal Gangs Destroyed, August, 2054.....	256
Some of the 99% Retaliate, Sept. 2054.....	257
Andy Tells Anna About the Police, Oct. 2054.	260
Chicago Parks – Funeral Pyres, Nov. 2054.....	261
Six Months, December, 2054.....	262
The Real Second Coming, Feb. 2055.....	263
Bulldozers and Dismantling, April, 2055.....	264
THE NEW WORLD ORDER.....	268
Lincoln Memorial, NWO begins, 2056.....	269
City State Security, 2056.....	273
Laws, Democracy at Work, 2056.....	277
City State Adjudication, 2056.....	281

Reconciliation, 2056.....	281
Dad Helps Ben, 2057.....	284
A Personal Choice, 2060.....	286
State of the NWO, 2060.....	287
Greg 2065 – Scene 1.....	291
Greg 2065 – Scene 2.....	294
Ben, 2065.....	299
Here’s The Deal, 2065.....	302
A Security Situation, 2065.....	305
Adjudication & Punishment, 2066.....	307
A Peek into the Life of Judy, 2067.....	309
A Peek into the Life of John, 2067.....	310
The Mixer, 2067.....	310
Judy, John Mix, 2067.....	313
Heaven & Hell On Earth, 2067.....	314
A Woman’s Wrath, 2067.....	322
Holidays, 2067.....	326
A Ladies Biology Meeting, 2070.....	330
99% Could Have, but Didn’t, 2075.....	332
The Golden Rule, 2080.....	335
 EPILOGUE.....	 336
 ICON ATTRIBUTIONS.....	 340



TOUGH TIMES

Young Couple; Transition Office, 2037

A couple, in their early twenties, is in trouble. The husband has lost his job as computer programmer. He has been looking, for over a year, for any kind of work that would allow them to live and start a family. Their money has run out. There are a huge number of unemployed of every description. There is no safety net, and they are desperate. They are sitting in the waiting room of the Transition Office in Schaumburg, Illinois, a suburb northwest of Chicago.

Counselor: She comes into the reception area. “Please follow me to my office.”

They do so. They are seated in front of the woman’s desk.

Husband: “I, we, can’t find any work sufficient to support ourselves, our parents cannot help us further, our savings are depleted, and we will soon be unable to pay our ordinary bills. We don’t know what to do.”

Counselor: “Your situation is now commonplace. You have four choices. First, you can continue to job search, living as homeless persons and dependent upon charity for food. Second, you can live a life of crime, stealing when opportunity presents itself. I don’t recommend this. You have not the instincts and familiarity to do this successfully. And the police are brutal, their transgressions rarely punished by the higher authorities, and more than willing to rape pretty women who have, or whose husbands have, engaged in ostensibly criminal behavior. Third, you can agree to surrender your citizenship permanently and leave the country. There are several nation states that are willing to take in computer programmers like yourself, at low pay, but sufficient to survive there. The US government will

provide a one-time stipend to facilitate this. Fourth, since your wife is a very attractive young woman, there is a free market exchange possible. A wealthy male can often be found who is willing to support, for a number of years, a single woman or married couple, in exchange for bearing and raising a child of his. This would involve your wife living with the man until she becomes pregnant by him. The support obligation would be established at the time of birth by a DNA check certifying he is the birth father. If you are interested in this option, it begins with a video, which we can take here at this facility, of her, undressed, for examination by interested males who have registered for this kind of contract and who are certified as qualified participants in this program. If a contract is agreed upon, a blood test would be taken at the time she is transferred to him. This ensures there is no disease or other condition that would void the contract. These are tough choices, but this is the world we now live in.”

Wife: She is crying. “I can’t believe this.”

Husband: In a state of shock. “Let’s get out of here.”

Counselor: Leading the couple back out to the reception room. “Think this over further. If option three or four becomes attractive, make an appointment to see us again.”

They slowly leave through the Transition Office entrance.

Couple Takes the Bait, 2037

The couple that had visited the Schaumburg, Illinois Transition Office has decided, under great stress, to allow a rich man to use the wife to bear him a child. She (Sky) has been video interviewed, tested for disease, and accepted by an individual with appropriate credentials. The couple

arrives at the Transition Office, and she is now to undergo final processing, then delivered to that person. It is early evening and the office is about to close its doors to persons freshly looking for work.

They are taken to a processing area where they sign some paperwork. The husband and wife kiss. An attendant leads her (she is pulling a rolling suitcase of personal items) to a transfer area where a photograph is taken, and a blood draw is made for final testing. An hour later, in an anteroom toward the back of the building, the attendant introduces her to the contracting male. He is tall, fair complected, with a full head of light brown hair. He is very good looking, well dressed, and in his late 20's. She is impressed that he is the CEO of a substantial technical corporation, yet looks so young, actually boyish. They immediately leave through the rear entrance where a limousine is waiting. A glass window separates the uniformed driver from the luxurious passenger area where Sky seats herself across from James Michner, the man she is to be intimate with for the next month or so. The limousine pulls away and they head directly to O'Hare airport. Her husband, Jeff, is given a \$15,000 check, the first installment of the contract.

James: "I know this is tough on you and your husband, and I'm a bit unsettled myself. From the time I saw your video and the expression on your face, I knew not only you are very beautiful, but are also a very nice, honest, and well meaning person. I really wanted to be with you. I know it's going to take some time for you to be comfortable with me, but I'm going to do everything I can to help you be so. Please don't ever be afraid to tell me what you feel, what

you need, and what you would rather I do. I really am a gentleman.”

Sky: “Thank you. And yes I’m quite agitated right now and am having trouble keeping my composure.”

James: “That’s understandable, and I expected that. Let me tell you what we are going to do. Chicago O’Hare airport has a General Aviation terminal where my personal jet is parked. My pilots and attendant are waiting for our arrival. I will introduce you, using your maiden name, Sky Belanka, to them and we will depart as soon as our flight plan is approved and we are given a take-off slot. We are going to San Francisco where my company’s headquarters are located. From there we will go to my suite in a high-rise building in the Bay area. It is the nearest thing I have to a home and permanent residence. There I will introduce you to Margret who is my housekeeper and who handles my affairs. She is a family relative, and I am able to trust her to keep confidential everything she knows about me and the people around me. She will look after you, show you around, see to your clothing and other personal needs, and be both your attendant and companion when I’m out of town – which, unfortunately, is quite often.”

The limousine pulls up to the General Aviation terminal. James leads Sky into the building where the pilots are busy filing the flight plan. Sky meets the flight attendant, Dana, who has just finished ensuring the aircraft is provisioned with what is needed in the cabin. The pilots finish, and all five head out to the private jet, a Cessna Citation. The trip to San Francisco will take several hours.

James straps himself in next to Sky before takeoff, and stays with her as much as he can, but he is confronted with

several urgent business matters – each of which he deals with very thoughtfully and carefully. He is always polite with whomever he speaks. She sees he’s a mature and responsible young man.

Halfway through the flight he needs to talk with the pilot and does so. In his absence, Dana and the copilot then join her and they talk.

Sky: “Dana, may I ask, how did you come to work for James?”

Dana: “Well, my husband, who is the pilot, was discharged from the Air Force several years ago. This was part of a general reduction forced by automation of the USAF cargo fleet and a diminished need for combat pilots caused by increased capability in drone aircraft and cruise missiles. He and James met at the civil avionics conference held yearly in Anaheim. James checked my husband’s background and experience, then hired him – paying him for his necessary training as a Cessna Citation pilot. After a few months, James then hired me. We’ve been part of James’s aviation department ever since. James is a real gentleman – quite unlike much of the military brass we served, and quite unlike the egoistic people served by many general aviation crews.”

Copilot: “My experience with James is like Dana’s and her husband’s. Her husband recommended me for another needed pilot position, and James checked me out.”

The sun has set and it is becoming dark. The Cessna is approaching the Bay Area and has been gradually descending. It is a very calm night, the sky is clear of clouds, air traffic is light at the Oakland airport where James bases his aircraft, and the copilot nods to James to let him

know he and Sky can come to the cockpit. James gently takes Sky by the hand and asks her to join him there. He straps her into the copilot's seat and kneels just behind her and between her and the pilot. James explains some of the instrumentation: the gyros showing the airplane's orientation in the air, the altitude and air speed indicators, the navigation screen showing their flight path, the engineering data screen showing the control surface positions, remaining fuel, and engine operating parameters, and the radar screen showing weather and other airplanes near by. It has gotten completely dark and they are about to make the final descent.

Through the flight deck window they see the Bay Area lit up like a wondrous, magical work of art painted with white pin points and meaningful splotches of light – and with the darkness of the Pacific Ocean further beyond. The parallel strips of lights delineating the runway upon which they will soon touchdown lie some distance ahead. Sky sees the awe and childlike expression on James's handsome face as he shows her this magnificent world. And she quickly shares that feeling of awe with him.

James: “This view is something so beautiful, so wonderful, so meaningful, and so fills me with such awe – that I wish all humans, present and past, could see it as we see it right now and be filled with the same sense of beauty and magic.” He then looks at her with love on his face and in his eyes. She sees how deeply he means what he says. She tells him to his face:

Sky: “Yes, James. I see it, and I feel it too.”
She is falling for him – and deeply so.

Sky is Seduced by James, 2037

Sky and James have arrived at his elegant residence in an exclusive high-rise in downtown San Francisco. Sky has been introduced to Margret, told Margret is his mother, and shown the living area – which occupies the entire top floor of the building. She is given clothes suitable for dinner and the two go out for a very light meal. He tells her more about life in San Francisco, what his business does, and how much he has wanted to be with her. Again she notices how respectful he is to everyone he interacts with and how reasonably and maturely he behaves in every encounter. They return to settle in for the night.

Both sit at the edge of his large bed, still in their dinner clothes.

James: “This has been a very stressful day for you, and I have no desire to push you to do anything you really do not want to do. Tomorrow, Margret will show you around the Bay Area, introduce you to shopping, places of entertainment, the beaches, and much more. But tonight it might be best for you to be by yourself and get what sleep you can. What do you think?”

Sky: “No. I know what I’m here for, and you seem to be a reasonable fellow. Why don’t we just stay together on your bed?”

James: “Very good my lady. I want you very much, but will be gentle with you and respectful of what you want.”

They each go to one of the two attached bathrooms and shower. He shaves. She spends some time tidying up her beautiful, long, straight, blond hair. They exit the bathrooms at the same time – totally undressed. They face one another.

He looks at her – his face showing love, and his demeanor radiating affection – reminiscent of the way a puppy dog looks up to its child master. He just about cries with obvious want for her. She senses his feelings, and she melts with desire for him. They hug and kiss.

In the wee hours of the morning she briefly awakens. He is asleep next to her – their legs and bodies partially entwined. Never before has she been taken to such heights of excitement and want, and then had that want so fully satisfied by a lover. She becomes fixated on his handsome sleeping face which is so young, yet so manly, like his young man's body. Even in sleep, there is a hint of a puppy dog staring with awe and respect up to its master. But in him that awe is directed to the Universe – to God you might say. He is man at his best. She realizes she wants to be with this man always – and wants all her children to be his. In fact, she becomes pregnant from this first encounter.

Sky is Given a Tour of SF, 2037

It is the next morning. Sky needs to become familiar with downtown shops, the exercise facility, hospital, library, the UCSF campus, and needs to meet various friends and members of James's family. Sky will be taken by Margret to the various places about town and needs to be shown a routine for exercise, massage, and beauty maintenance. She is also to gain administrative skills, schooling in the practical application of medicine, and in general the manners and practice of elegant life.

At 7am Sky meets Margret in the kitchen. They both are wearing exercise clothing and running shoes. They take the

elevator down to the 35th floor. The door opens to an exercise gym covering the entire floor. They go up to a pair of first rate treadmills and climb on.

Margret: “See those two triangles in the middle? They control the speed in tenths of a mile per hour. Just hit the green ‘start’ button.”

Sky’s machine starts at 2 mph. Margret gets hers up to 5mph. Sky quickly works hers up to 4 mph and then 5. They do this for a full 30 minutes – sometimes commenting to one another, sometimes watching TV mounted on each machine’s console.

Sky: “Wow. That’s enough. It’s been years since I’ve used one of these.”

Margret: “Starting tomorrow we’ll do this again, but add about a half-hour of those weight machines you see over there.”

They head back to their complex, take showers, get properly dressed for going out, and head to the building restaurant on the 53rd floor – just below their complex. They are seated at a table looking out over the Bay. They are immediately waited, place their orders for light breakfast, and get served in just a few minutes.

Sky: “Do you always get served this fast?”

Margret: “I’ve never waited very long. When we finish here I’m taking you to school.”

After a quick small omelet and orange juice, Margret pulls out her cell phone, presses an icon on the home screen, and they head to the transportation garage on the first floor.

Margret: “Phillip! [He is the limousine chauffeur and is the autopilot backup.] Take us to the UCSF administration building please.”

Phillip: “Yes Ma’am!” He sets the autopilot to go to UCSF. At the admin building they examine the course schedules and discuss some of the possibilities. Margret talks briefly to the admissions director who appears to know her. Sky picks up a course catalog to take with her as they leave. They head back to the limo which remains waiting outside. Phillip is waiting. He opens their doors, helps them be seated, closes their doors, gets into his seat, commands his door to close, and waits to be told the next destination.

Margret: “Sky, would you like to see my hair dresser and then visit some of my favorite shopping places?”

Sky: “Sure!”

Off they go. Sky gets the VIP tour!

Sky Pregnant; Future Agreed Upon, 2037

A month and a half has passed. Sky is certified as pregnant. It is time for a serious discussion about her future.

Sky and James take their evening shower in their individual baths, dry down and enter the bedroom, nude and ready for their usual intimacy. They make love, then sit in bed and talk.

James: “Sky, there is something we need to talk about.” She tenses and looks him straight in the face. She knows what the contract said.

Sky: “What is it?”

James: “The contract. I don’t want to let you go back.” She relaxes, her relief is evident in the loosening of every muscle in her body.

Sky: “I don’t want to go back.”

James: “I was praying you would feel this way. I prepared a list of reasons for why you should not go back – ever.”

Sky: “You don’t have to tell me, but I’d like to hear them anyway.”

James: “First, our child cannot get the proper upbringing there – not the care, the mother reliably available for him or her, stable surroundings, the medicine, the schooling, the quality playmates, and the education. When she or he grows up, the child will not gain the connections to other favored people, and generally the opportunity for a good life. Second, you know I’m a reliable and respectful partner. I really want to be with you on a regular basis, and that’s not going to change.”

Sky: “How about the contract?”

James: “It’s easy to break. There is a reference in it to another document that explicitly states you have the option to stay with me. Jeff receives a significant monthly stipend and the contract is deemed fulfilled.”

There is a pause. He holds her hand.

James: “There is another matter. You are not the only lady I have a relationship, a permanent relationship, with. Many men like myself do. In fact, it’s expected behavior.”

Sky takes a deep breath.

Sky: “I’ve expected this. Margret has shown me several ladies to whom I expect you are referring. I’ve thought about it, and I think I can live with it. I’d rather share a kind, competent, mature, and responsible man who is a capable lover, than live in misery married to a boy who is not.”

James: “It’s important that all my ladies accept one another and all help with the children. I treat each and each of their children with full and equal respect. No jealousy is tolerated, and there is no need for it. I have a heavy vested interest in everyone.”

Sky: “I accept that. I need for you to pay me regular attention, perhaps not so much as you have in the last months, but at least several times a week. Can you promise that?”

James: “Yes I can. Several of our group of ten do not want as much intimacy as you and I do, nor do those who are pregnant want as much. And by-the-way, from now on, after this first child, the choice remains yours as to if and when you want to become pregnant again.”

Sky: “Sounds good. I’m happy.”

James: “Sky, we’ll take care of the contract and divorce legalities tomorrow. I genuinely love you.”

They kiss, and tuck in for the night.

Husband Learns of Divorce, 2037

The husband has been told to come to the Schaumburg Transition Office. It concerns his wife. He enters the facility and goes to the reception desk. The manager notices he has arrived and leads him to her [enclosed] office. She pulls up a seat for him next to hers at her desk. She turns her computer monitor so both can see the screen.

Manager: “We’ve received a video legal notice from your wife. She has divorced you, and this video is the legal document that is required.”

The ex-husband is shocked. Both view the video. Sky’s face is full in the screen. Her face is taut. She speaks. She states her full legal name, and that of the husband she now intends to legally divorce. She then tells her husband that she is permanently and legally leaving him per an option in the contract that both she and he signed at the Transition Office,

and that she is doing so of her own free will. A copy of the referenced option is posted at the end of the video.

Husband: “How can this be? Divorce requires mutual agreement and is subject to formal proceedings.”

Manager: “Not in this case. The law provides that if no money or property is claimed by the party seeking divorce, that party is free to do so. The contract you signed explicitly referenced a document describing this option. This reflects a change in the law that was, in fact, instigated by those using contracts such as the one you signed for exactly this purpose. It’s been tested in court, it’s legal.”

The husband is speechless. The manager shows him the door.

Sky, James, Small Talk, 2037

James and Sky have a normal evening together. James had a little time on his hands earlier in the day so he decided to do a little investigation of Sky’s parentage. He now tells her about what he’s found, and tells her about his own parentage. They are both sitting in bed.

James: “Sky, I had a little time on my hands today at work. I decided to look through the birth records of your side of the family. Would you like to hear what I found?”

Sky: “Sure. I don’t know all that much myself. My mother’s maiden name was Sonia Pletskaya, a Russian name, and my dad, Nickolas Belanka, was a Polish immigrant. He was several years younger than her and they married a few years before I was born. He was a mathematician and taught in a junior college in the years I grew up. He didn’t make a lot of money, but we had enough to get by. What did you find?”

James: “Well it turns out your mother has an interesting background. She was a younger sister to Katya Pletskaya who emigrated from Russia at the time of the anti-Soviet coup. Katya had been forced into sex slavery by a criminal gang formed just after the coup. A young man, named Kolya Petrovich, who had been an engineer, rescued her, both then coming to the US. Both Katya and Kolya were convinced that should your mother stay in Russia, then she too would be kidnapped and used as a sex slave – apparently she was a very beautiful young girl. Kolya brought her over also.”

Sky: “That I didn’t know. I used to wonder why Mom never talked much about her life before she came to the US, which was when she was quite young, ten years old or something like that.”

James: “Anyway, that’s what I found out. Would you like to hear more about my past?”

Sky says yes, and James tells her all about his grandfather John Michner, his grandmother Henrietta, their unmarried daughter Margret (his mother), and his birth father Ted.”

James: “So you see, I’m a real bastard!”

They both laugh.

James: “There’s a bit more. Grandfather John and Henrietta had no more children, and I am their only grandchild. As John developed the businesses, Margret, more and more, became a principle partner. As John got older, Margret took over the reigns and kept control until I became capable. I did so, but it was very gradual. For many years Margret, my mom, and I worked together almost day and night. She had learned to think and decide as did my grandfather, and then she and I converged our thinking to the point where we were like Siamese twins. As I started the family you are part of, she shifted more and more to a grandmotherly role and I

more totally to the businesses. But, even today, I go to her to discuss really troublesome business issues.”

Sky: “While we’re reaching back into the past, there is something else I’ve wondered about. How did you learn I was available via the Schaumburg Transition Office?”

James: “In less than a minute after your resume was broadcast to the list of interested parties, of which I was one, Margret and I responded affirmatively. My contract offer was immediately accepted. There was some behind the scenes with this. We had made arrangements with the managers of several Transition Offices around the country – those whose offices are located where highly skilled and competent people, like you and your husband, tended to be concentrated. We made certain those managers knew I was fully qualified to bid, and we also let each individual manager know we would show gratitude if we were favored in such a transaction. The Schaumburg Manager had sent your data to me somewhat before the official release – data which Margret and I studied as soon as we received it. I wanted you so badly I couldn’t think about anything else. As I said, we watched for the official release, then pounced.”

Sky: “Your mom was well involved, wasn’t she?”

James: “Yes – I’m a bit of a mama’s boy, aren’t I?”

Sky: “No problem – you’re also what a man should be.”
They both smile at each other.

Sky: “How grateful to the manager were you?”

James: “I believe she purchased a rather substantial robo-car with the gratuity!”

Sky: “James. Are you using this service now?”

He looks at her with his loving look and sincerely says:

James: “No. I have who I really want. She is here with me.”

She kisses him. They turn out the lights and tuck in under the sheets and blanket for a night's sleep.

Why Do We Deserve This? 2037

We the people, the little people, the small people, are hurting. We went to school, to college. Most of us who earned engineering or business or teaching or nursing degrees cannot find suitable work. Those who served in the military can only find policing work – and only if they are deemed sufficiently brutal to terrorize persons very much like ourselves – persons whose only real crime is to be of no particular use to the rich and politically powerful.

In Chicago, two young men sit at a bench by Buckingham Fountain in Grant park – staring at the huge colossus gushing volumes of water, and with their backs to the fancy commercial buildings across Michigan Avenue just hundreds of yards away.

Victim one: “What did we do wrong?”

Victim two: “We are doing a lot wrong. I was a computer programmer – thinking I was favored, that I was better than others, that other people's problems were their own fault. Then I was tossed to the street. The employer replaced me with someone he knew would be more compliant, more amenable to pressure – a foreigner, from India. I could find no further work that would support a family. This went on for a year. Our savings were used up. The mortgage on our house exceeded what we could sell it for. We had no rich relatives to help. We went to one of those infamous Transition Offices. There my beautiful wife was offered a

contract – she would carry a rich man’s child – in return for a subsidy to us sufficient for us to live and raise the child. I foolishly agreed. She left. Apparently she accepted a new life as a permanent wife of this man. She divorced me, and the contract was deemed fulfilled – and all of this was somehow legal. I’ve never heard from her again and don’t know where she is or even in what city or country. I don’t even know the man’s name.”

Victim one: “That’s pretty rough.”

Victim two: “Yes. But I’ve had a lot of time to think. We, I, let a lot of very bad things happen. We let a small class of selfish people, people absolutely contemptuous of us, own everything of value: the TV stations, the newspapers, the corporations where we worked, and the factories where the products we needed were made. We let them control the political parties – promoting candidates that talked nice to us, but who served only the rich and powerful. Worst of all we let them control what we think, so that they could brainwash us into thinking that everything was OK, that we should just accept what was. So we let them control everything, and that meant we let them make us their serfs, their servants, their disposable underlings. We let them able to do anything they wanted.”

Victim one: “But, you couldn’t have done anything about all this, right?”

Victim two: “Not so. And this is the most painful part, the part that makes me wish I were dead. I could have done something. We all could have done something. We could have organized ourselves in our neighborhoods. We could have met monthly to discuss what was truly important. We could have expressed our concerns to one another. We could have done detective work on issues that we agreed were

important. We could have gotten good information – so we would know we were being lied to by the politicians and the media. We could have networked with other neighborhoods to find our common ground. We could have elected persons from among ourselves to do the terribly important work of governance. We could have prevented this awful concentration of power into an arrogant ruling class. We could have built a real democracy. We could have, we should have, we might have. But we didn't. I didn't. And now another man is in the presence of my wife's overpowering beauty, feels her warmth, is the object of her intimate attention. I have to believe she willingly submits herself, both body and soul, to him. The sperm that flows each night into my beautiful wife is not mine but that of another man, a rich man. Yes, now I have wisdom. Now I understand. But my wisdom is too late. And my rage is of no importance, it is impotent."

He is sobbing.

Victim one: "My name is Norm, Norm Pott. What's yours?"

Victim two: "Jeff, Jeff Petersen."

Norm: "You are in no shape to be by yourself tonight. Let me take you to where my sister and I camp down. We can make room for you."

Jeff: "Maybe so."

As the sun gets low over the city of Chicago, they head up Michigan Avenue, cross the canal, and head northwest to Norm's camp.

TIMES THEY WERE A CHANGING

Legitimate Wealth, 1970

The following meeting takes place on the campus of the University of Illinois in Champaign-Urbana in 1970. Duane Hall, Professor of Electrical Engineering, is in his office and meeting with one of his PhD candidate graduate students, John Michner. The topic is a concept John has created that likely will be very important to the semiconductor (i.e. integrated circuit and computer) industry. It concerns constructing and connecting electronic components very effectively into semiconductor material. The major semiconductor fabricators will pay large royalties for licenses to use this patent. John will become a multi-millionaire and will establish several important electronics related businesses, for one of which he will serve as Chief Executive Officer (CEO) and principal investor.

Professor Hall: “John, I don’t think I’ve ever heard or seen a potentially more important semiconductor manufacturing concept than what you just showed me. I’m astounded.”

John: “What a compliment that is sir. Thank you.”

Professor Hall: “John listen. For your sake, don’t tell anyone else about this until you’ve protected your rights to it. It’s very patentable and very valuable. In a few years the industry will be bumping against manufacturing problems that this appears to solve! I know a patent attorney in Chicago that you need to contact. He does work for many technology businesses and is a friend of mine. I’ll let him know who you are and that I sent you. There are those who will try to deny you your rights to this and will use any ambiguity in your status or any flaw in your patent effort to muddy the waters.”

John: “I understand. I’d appreciate every bit of help you are willing to give me.”

Professor Hall: “Let’s go over what you need to provide and what you need to unambiguously describe in the application.”

The two use the white board to list what needs to be done, and to note details that must be carefully explained. John then writes those down as notes to keep. The white board is quickly erased afterwards.

Henrietta and John, 1983

John is doing his morning exercise. He is running in the magnificent park just South of the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco. He has just sat down on a bench next to the running trail, and has done so to tighten a loose shoe string. A young woman runs by. She captures his attention. She is straight backed, her legs are long and quite muscular. Her bottom is full and wide, the way a woman’s should be. Her baby feeders are obviously present but not excessive. Her brown-blond and slightly frizzled hair is braided and tied to the top of her head – so it does not flop about as she runs. The look on her face shows she does not think she is beautiful, but she is. She resembles Helga in Andrew Wyeth’s wonderful paintings. He immediately gets up and slowly catches up to her. He asks her permission to run along side her.

Henrietta: “If you like. I don’t mind.”

John: “Thanks. This is my first time on this trail. It’s beautiful here.”

They run together. He occasionally turns his face toward her and smiles. She notices, and once she smiles back. But she is in better condition than is he. He is having to breathe harder, but he wants to keep up with her. After about a mile he really has to slow down and catch his breath. She stops and turns to him.

Henrietta: “You really need to stop for a while.”

He stops and is sweating profusely. But he wants to keep looking at her. He is somewhat like a puppy dog staring with big brown eyes at its master – full of love and deference. She turns and starts to run again. After a few dozen feet, she stops and looks back. He looks crushed – as if his world has collapsed. She walks back, and the two of them walk over to the nearest bench. He brightens up.

John: “Thanks. I really wanted to keep up with you.”

Henrietta: “Why?”

John: “I don’t know how to say this. I’m afraid I’ll frighten you, and I don’t want to do that.”

Henrietta: “Why don’t you just say what’s on your mind? My name is Henrietta, Henrietta Neuberger. What’s yours?”

John: “I’m John, John Michner. I was just tying my shoelace at the bench way back there. When you ran by, something inside of me just snapped – I just wanted to be with you – and started running to catch up. Henrietta, please don’t push me away. I’ll do anything to reassure you I mean you no harm. If you want, call a friend or parent or whoever to meet us, or for all of us to have dinner somewhere.”

Henrietta: “John, let me see your wallet.”

He hands it to her. His driver’s license shows a photo of his face. The name on the license is indeed John Michner. He also has a company badge for Advanced Microcircuit Solutions. She gives him his wallet back.

Henrietta: “Let me see your wrist.”

He offers it and she counts his pulse rate. It is down to 78.

Henrietta: “If you would like to have dinner with me tonight, meet me at the main entrance to San Francisco General Hospital at 6pm. That’s the end of my shift. I’ll be wearing my ordinary street clothes. And now I need to get going. I have to be at work on time. Would you like to see if you can run, not too fast, to the East gate of the park?”

They run together toward that East gate. This time he is able to keep up.

A Proposition, 1983

Since that first encounter in Golden Gate Park, John and Henrietta have seen each other virtually every day for three weeks. They’ve shared her bed a dozen times. He remains completely, crazily in love with her. But he has kept information about his economic life from her. He has not wanted her to know he is wealthy. And she has come to accept his companionship and is comfortable being intimate with him. Being generally suspicious of men’s intentions toward her, she is still wary – although she is more and more falling for him, more and more thinking of him as her partner in life.

It is Friday. They have finished their morning run, and he is catching his wind. They are sitting at their special bench before leaving the park. John gets down on one knee, holds her hands, and looks into her face with the puppy dog look on his. He is a bit anxious.

John: “Hen [now her nickname], will you be my wife, will you marry me?”

Hen: “John, are you able to support a family? Do you know what you are asking?”

John: “If I could convince you I am able to support you and a family, would you accept me as your husband?”

Hen: “I think so. Yes.”

He brightens up! He stands up.

John: “Then you and I have some places to go this morning. Hen, I’m going to call your bosses’ boss.”

He pulls out his cell phone and calls the Director of Nurses at San Francisco General. He has a direct line to the Director’s cell phone.

John: “Fred, this is John Michner. Do you have just a few seconds?”

Fred: “Yes, what’s up John?”

John: “Henrietta, one of your nurses, is going to be with me this morning. It’s very important. Could you do me the favor of letting her be free of work responsibilities today?”

Fred: “Yes – I’ll call the scheduler and let her know Henrietta won’t be in. Is there anything else I can help you with?”

John: “No. That’s it. I appreciate very much your helping with this. I’ll see you at the medical technology meeting two weeks from now.”

Fred: “Great. Tell Henrietta hello for me.”

John turns to Hen.

Hen: “You know Fred?”

John: “Yes – for several years now. There is a joint task force between San Francisco General and several technology companies in the Bay area. We meet once a month to review the hospital’s technology development plan. I am sometimes the chair of the meeting.”

Hen: “I think you’d better tell me who you really are.”

John: “Yes, let’s pick up some clothes and things at your place, then go to my residence. I have some important things to show you, and people for you to meet. Unless, you tell me not to, I’m going to introduce you as my fiancée.” They do just that: pick up some of her clothes, then shower at his place, enjoy a quick light breakfast, and visit his work place: Advanced Microcircuit Solutions. They enter the large glass front door and go to the receptionist’s desk. The young woman looks up, smiles, and says: “Good morning Doctor Michner!”

John: “Good morning Li Ann. This is my fiancée, Henrietta.”

Li Ann: “Pleased to meet you, Henrietta.”

Henrietta: “And I, you.”

John: “Li Ann, please let Amy [his personal secretary] know we’re going to my office.”

Li Ann pushes one of the buttons at her desk to let John and Henrietta through the security door, then another to call Amy. John and Henrietta pass through and take an elevator to the top floor. John introduces Henrietta to Amy – then he and Hen go into his office, the biggest one on the top floor, and the one which looks out across both the Bay and the Golden Gate Bridge. He puts Hen into his plush desk chair, and pulls one of the smaller chairs to sit next to her.

Hen: “John, why didn’t you tell me about this before?”

John: “Hen, I’m sorry. I couldn’t. I needed to know you would be willing to be with me, even if I didn’t have some money and influence. Please forgive me.”

Hen: “I won’t be wife to a man who keeps secrets from me, who lies to me.”

John: “I know. I wouldn’t expect you to. There will be no more of this. There will be times when I won’t talk to you about contractual secrets, or matters of state secrecy, but that’s it. On personal matters you will know everything I know. And, Hen, I will not cheat on you. I need your children to be my children. I will not dishonor you – I love and respect you.”

John gives Henrietta a tour of the business and introduces her to many of his employees. Before you know it, they are finished with dinner with a couple who are both friends of his and principals at the company. The couple take their leave, and Hen and John are alone.

John: “Why don’t we stay at my place tonight, and maybe from now on? We can pick up your things and bring them there. If you don’t mind I’ll help you pack.”

Hen: “Oh – yes, I don’t see why not.”

They do so. After unpacking and a quick shower, they are at bedside. His face has that puppy dog look, and his eyes look at her with the love that is really there. But also, there is a Lion in him, and it is aroused. His hands and lips and tongue visit virtually every square inch of her gorgeous woman’s body. She presents to him every part of her that she wants him to touch. When the intensity becomes almost too much to bear, she pushes him away for a second, slides more fully on her back, into the bed, then pulls him by the hand and asks him to mount her. Gently and carefully he enters. In a very short while their mutual excitement reaches a crescendo. The fluid of life explodes into a river of whiteness intent on reaching the eggs of life that might be. One lucky sperm in that river will find its way. This was the

moment of genuine marriage. A few months later Hen and John will be formally married. She will have a slight bump in her abdomen. It will get more and more pronounced.

Margret is Born, 1984

John Michner and his wife Henrietta have just had a baby girl. They are in the recovery room at San Francisco General where Henrietta is a nurse, and their newborn, Margret, is being breast fed.

John: “Hen, just look at her. She is so beautiful, so perfect.”

Hen: “Yes. The doctors and nurses tell us her numbers, and everything for which you can examine a child, are completely normal. We couldn’t ask for more. We are so blessed.”

John: “Yes. ... but I can’t stop wondering about the world that I’m helping to make for her and for all the other young people. These integrated electronic circuits, these computers on a chip, are so useful, yet they can also be terribly misused. I keep thinking about how powerful they will become and about the people who will come to use and misuse them. These devices can automate industry, surveil both systems and people, facilitate warfare, centralize information, and much more. I feel like the scientists that developed the atomic bomb.”

Hen: “I know you worry about that. But there’s not much you can do to direct the use of that technology. Let’s do the best we can for this little beauty of ours.”

John: “You’re right Hen. I need to keep my head on straight.”

Jackson Hole, Round of Golf, 1990

The US elite have convened at Jackson Hole, WY to socialize, to discuss current events, to discover what concerns they currently have in common, and to develop policy for government to implement. Two of the US ruling class are discussing their primary concerns while on a round of golf.

Lester Gran: “I see two ultimately dangerous trends. First, too damn many people on this planet – less than three hectares of agricultural land per person on the average, and yet the population keeps increasing. Second, automation of industrial processes is real. It isn’t displacing much labor yet, but give it two or three decades, it will. We ought to start paying attention.”

Brian MacDonna: “Yes – I see it that way also. But for now I don’t see the need for action. Let’s see how fast automation evolves, and let’s see if maybe the population size stabilizes. But, as you suggest, long term we’re probably gonna have trouble.”

KGB Headquarters, 1991

A meeting takes place in a conference room in what had been the KGB headquarters on Prospect St. in Moscow, Russia. Vladimir Churkin, the highest ranking officer in the KGB, is presented to the US Director of Central Intelligence (DCI), James Trapper, for a post cold war interview. Churkin, in full Soviet military display uniform, and handcuffed, is seated at the middle of a long rectangular table with his back to a window with bars. Standing to his side is a guard of the newly created (by the CIA) Russian FSB. On

the opposite side of the table are Boris Yeltsin's Director of Internal Security (DIS), Trapper, and a young Russian woman, Katya. Katya has accompanied Trapper for the duration of his Russian visit. She has straight, flowing yellow hair, high Slavic cheek bones, a perfect woman's face and figure, and is wearing a black business suit. Her presence, at this meetings, has a special purpose. The meeting will be televised over certain private networks, to be shown in many communist offices throughout the old Soviet Union and in the multitude of Russian military barracks as well. The humiliating abuse of the KGB Director, in his own administrative building, is to show the KGB has been utterly dismantled, and by implication any coordinated action by the military against the Yeltsin/CIA coup is impossible. The communist party of the Soviets has no viable, remaining organs of governance, of power. The CIA backed Yeltsin is the new boss in Russia, and in fact, the US is able to do as it pleases. That Russian women can be used as sex slaves and displayed as such in public, and with impunity – shows who really is in absolute control and can do whatever else it pleases. Outside the door stands an armed guard in uniform.. Discussion begins:

[Movie Version – during this discussion, news clips from the past are played which illustrate what is being said.]

Yeltsin's DIS: “As prior chief of operations in the Moscow region you are being detained to prevent KGB and military action adverse to Yeltsin's presidency. The paperwork shows you descend from a long line of party members and officials. Why did your grandfather Alexei join the Bolsheviks?”

Vladimir Churkin: “It was in 1917. He was on the German front. The men around him were being slaughtered by German artillery and machine gun fire. The czar, with complete abandon, continued to throw hundreds of thousands of poorly trained and equipped young men like him to their near certain deaths – and for what? For the ambitions and rivalries of the aristocracies of Europe and America – that’s all! Virtually all the troops had had enough. It was time. A new way for people to live was needed, with a type of government serving the ordinary people. He, and several hundred thousands, left the front, went to Moscow and Saint Petersburg, joined the movement, fought the remnants of the White army of the czar and then the soon arriving US, British, Japanese, and other invaders from the thirteen countries seeking to terminate the new socialist state.”

Trapper: “The attempt at a ‘new way’ for people to live hasn’t worked out too well – has it?”

Vladimir Churkin: “How could it? Initially the Soviet Union was a very backward nation, constantly threatened, and periodically invaded by foreign aristocracies sworn to eliminate it, prohibited from obtaining industrial machinery needed for internal development, denied mutually beneficial trade, and incessantly subject to sabotage and subversion by well trained and financed foreign agents, many speaking flawless Russian and fully familiar with Russian customs. What were its chances?”

Trapper: “I see you ignore some other factors: how people here had little motivation to work, to produce – or freedom of opportunity to create wealth, for their own personal benefit, but which would also benefit others. And you ignored another fundamental factor – people, normally,

don't exert effort and suffer pain for the benefit of others – but they will do so for themselves and their families. Rather big omissions – wouldn't you say?"

Churkin stands up in anger.

Vladimir Churkin: "Go ahead and congratulate yourselves on your terrible victory. But mark my words: the destruction you will now do, in your greed and arrogance, to humanity in this forthcoming age of automation – will be evil beyond current comprehension. May you burn in hell forever!"

Trapper: Laughs. "I didn't know you believed in Hell." The prisoner is roughly pulled out of his chair and dragged out of the room. He is taken to his cell. Yeltsin's DIS turns to Trapper.

Yeltsin's DIS: "I apologize to you for this childish outburst."

Trapper: "It's no big deal. Forget it."

All remaining participants depart the room and the building.

Trapper Enjoys Katya, 1991

After the day's visits are over, Trapper and his Russian woman go back to his hotel suite near the Kremlin. A CIA security agent opens the limousines' passenger door. Katya and Trapper walk toward the main entrance of the Moskva. Attendants open the heavy doors and they walk through. Accompanied by two security guards, the elevator takes them to the top floor. As they approach the suite door, the CIA guard at station opens it and they enter. A tray with Jim Beam, Stolichnaya vodka, ice and glasses is to the side.

Trapper heads to the John and relieves himself. He undresses. His fat belly gets in the way as he takes off his

shoes and pants. He then takes a hot shower. Katya sits on the side of the king size bed. She knows what's next. She's already had to tolerate this ugly, evil monster on top of her three times this week. At least he is likely to be free of disease. This may not be the case when the Yeltsin supported Moscow mafia, installed by the CIA, assign her to the next influential visitor to the Moscow region. And can she believe her captors, who kidnapped her and threatened her parents and sibling should she not do what they demand? Her young sister is quite beautiful – will they leave her alone as they promised? At the turning off of his shower, she breaks her unhappy reverie. She pushes her high heeled shoes off, loosens her waist belt, and pulls off her skirt. In a minute the thug will fondle her breasts, salivate on her nipples, and force her thighs apart.

Kolya Rescues Katya, 1991

Katya has finished servicing DCI Trapper. She returns to the small apartment in Moscow from which she had been dispatched. It was set up by the Russian crime complex to facilitate human trafficking – of the kind to provide high level entertainment for very important foreigners visiting on official business. There, a young man, Kolya, intimidated into controlling several young Russian women to work as VIP chaperons, has had enough. A discussion between Kolya and Katya takes place.

Kolya: “Katya, I need to talk to you – in private.”

Katya: “Why? What for? Haven't I done what you demanded?”

Kolya: ”Yes you have. I want to talk to you about something else. Let's take a ride on the subway.”

They take a short walk, with faces covered, to the station a few blocks away. They enter and take the subway toward some town a half-hour away. There are only a few people in the carriage, and those are sitting several meters away. The noise of the tracks keeps their conversation secret.

Katya: “Where are we going?”

Kolya: “As far as we need to for me to talk to you in private. Perhaps the end of the line. Then we will return. Katya, listen to me, and let me show you something.” He pulls out some paperwork from inside his coat. He continues.

“Katya, don’t you see I love you. Don’t you see the pain in me when I’ve sent you out on these dirty jobs?”

Katya: “But if you loved me, how could you have sent me?”

Kolya: “If I hadn’t they’d have killed me as unreliable and a possible turncoat, and someone else would have sent you out to the same animals and probably raped you regularly as well.”

He looks at her with obvious concern and love in his eyes. In fact, he is a handsome young engineer. She has even thought of him as a possible mate. He continues.

“Katya, you, your sister, and I are leaving this ugly place. No good is going to come out of a Russia controlled by gangsters and traitors groomed and supported by Yeltsin and his CIA overseers. These papers will allow us to fly out of Sheretemevo to New York City. Tomorrow morning a close and longtime friend of mine will pick me up. We will drive to your apartment to pick you up at about 8am. From there we’ll go to your family’s apartment to include your sister, then drive directly to the airport. You and your sister need very little baggage – just one carry-on each. I’ve worked

this out with your brother who understands that Sonia cannot stay here. We will leave him with cash sufficient to take care of himself and your mother for a good period of time. Here are the passports, tickets, and other documents we need. Let's go over them. You have some nurses training. That will help you get through the immigration inspectors in NYC."

They huddle and carefully go through the documents. Tomorrow, they will successfully board the aircraft, fly to the US, and will enter as legitimate immigrants.

Tennis Court Talk, 1991

Two men are sitting on the bench by a tennis court located inside one of the enclosed, luxury communities in the Northern Virginia area.

These long time friends, Raymond and David, both Harvard graduates and both from wealthy, influential families, have just played several sets and are now relaxing and exchanging what's news since they last met. Because they know different sets of VIPs, they usually have quite a bit to talk about.

Raymond: "Surprise! The Soviets are gone. What happened?"

David: "Yes! Big story. Forget what the media are telling the people. Here's apparently what happened: Cell phone technology was developed by AT&T in the late 1960's. By the late 1970's the Soviet big shots got lots of cell phones. There were security features: coded modulation techniques, and so on – but that was easy for the NSA (National Security Agency) to hack. The NSA seems to have been

established precisely to intercept Soviet communications including land lines, microwave relay stations, and especially these cell phones. A spying system (surreptitiously embedded into a commercial communications system of Low Earth Orbit satellites called Iridium), and other means, intercepted the telephone conversations. The identities of the users were determined, and the content analyzed by Russian speaking agents working for the NSA and the CIA. The entire social structure of the Communist party and the Soviet military leadership was mapped out, and the sentiments of the various persons determined in great detail. This was a gold mine for subverting the system. Our agents in place were told which persons were safe to recruit. With time, going into the late 1980's, it was possible to organize a coup. In essence, our agents in the highest levels of the Soviet leadership, both party and the military, were able to take control of the KGB and the Guards Divisions in the Moscow area – and in parts of the hinterland as well. When party general secretary Mikhail Gorbachev visited the Black Sea resort area, the time was ripe. US agents in the military, the KGB, and local police, arrested those generals in the guards divisions who were loyal to the party. CIA agents were then placed into all the positions of primary control and power. The mass media, and in particular the broadcasting station in the Ostinkino sector of Moscow, were also occupied and started broadcasting as if a wide-spread change in governance had occurred and had succeeded. Also, communications between Soviet military units outside the Moscow region were disrupted. How this latter feat was done is not clear to the people I know, but it assured that forces loyal to the communist party outside Moscow had no

way to effectively respond. Yeltsin, a drunken mayor of some city in Siberia was declared President.”

Raymond: “Wow!”

David: “Yes – it’s astounding!”

Raymond: “Wow! What an accomplishment. And now the US is the lone top dog on planet Earth. We can pretty much do as we damn well please – right?”

David: “Well, there will certainly be no more Soviet interference in our businesses investing all around the world – the government officials in all of the countries will have to behave as we want them to.”

Raymond: “Sounds like the ‘golden age’ for us. It’s going to be interesting making US workers compete with the labor pool available all around the world. Looks like the world is ours to fuck around with. And that suggests something else – when the CIA takes down an unfriendly regime having a population that resents us – don’t they go in and establish an organized network of criminals and gangsters to intimidate and terrorize the population? And doesn’t that network usually engage in importing and selling drugs, as well as trafficking in sex, in women?”

David: “Yes.”

Raymond: “Well then, how about sending over some of those Russian babes for us to enjoy – you know, as kind of redress for the limits they put on our activity in so much of the world for so many decades!”

They both laugh.

Historical Note: The CIA instigated coup of August 1991, and the economic ‘reform’ it instituted in October, quickly became despised by the Russian population. In Sept. 1993, the legitimate legislature (Supreme Soviet) acted to remove

the coup power structure. To retain power, that power structure responded by shelling the legislative building with tanks and ‘dissolving’ the legislature using storm troopers.

Margret & Ted, 2009

It is early afternoon. Margret Michner and one of her male friends, Ted, are sitting in a noisy restaurant. Both earned their Doctor of Medicine (MD) degrees here in San Francisco, but did internships at hospitals in different cities. Now both are back with other past classmates to celebrate their status as full-fledged MDs. He is probably the most ideal male she has ever encountered – handsome, intelligent, witty, and the best of genes. Years ago, at med school, she checked-out his family background – his family tree is as good as it gets. But she’d never marry him. In his professional life he’ll be hooking-up with nurses left-and-right, and with half of his more attractive female patients. She has another use for him.

Ted: “So how have you been lady?”

Margret: “Just great! I can hardly believe it’s finally over and I successfully did it. How about you?”

Ted: “Yeah! I feel that way too, but my head is still ringing with all the crazy stuff I saw in New York.”

Margret: “What kind of stuff? I’d like to hear about it.”

They talk medical while laughing and enjoying themselves. After an hour, she looks at her watch, stands-up and says she’s got to meet another friend.

Ted: “Hey! Would you like to have dinner with me tonight? And we can drift around San Francisco a bit.”

She agrees, and they arrange to meet. They will do more than just drift around San Francisco.

James is Born, 2010

It is nine months after Margret was certified as a bonafide medical doctor and had celebrated with friends in San Francisco. She is in the Maternity Recovery Room in Parkland General Hospital in Dallas, Texas and has just given birth to a healthy boy. The name on his foot cuff reads: James Michner. He is in a swaddling blanket, and his mother is breast feeding him. Margret's mother is in a seat on one side of the bed, and her Dad is next to her mother.

Mom: “This isn’t the way we expected to become grandparents, but we understand your thinking. In this day and place there is no ideal mate.”

The mother turns to her husband while correcting herself.

Mom: “These days you could not find someone like your Dad. We can certainly help you raise James, we have the resources, and you knew that. I don’t know how we are ever going to explain this to our friends, but that’s a matter we can put off for a while.”

Dad: “We’ll work it out. If I were in your shoes, I’d probably have done the same thing.”

Amazon Automation Rush, 2017

Amazon Corporation has been successful in automating the cataloging, selling, and shipping of a huge variety of goods using the Internet. ‘Brick and mortar’ (walk-in) stores are mortally threatened. Amazon has just acquired Whole Foods, a major distributor of quality foodstuffs. Merchants – of all flavors – now feel threatened. So do their agricultural and industrial suppliers who now fear a future where they must sell to behemoth purveyors like Amazon.

Merchants and suppliers, of many, many descriptions, must now consider their business positions to be vulnerable. They must now ponder how the economic niches they currently occupy will be filled in a new, automated, lower cost business environment where logistical arrangements may be very different, and where new players may operate in ways to which they are not accustomed. Old players will have to adopt, and heavily invest in, automation that is new to them, and in which they are not familiar. It is unnerving. And for good reason. New players, with lots of cash, will be looking for opportunities to displace old players. There will be attempts to automate economic niche after economic niche. A new ‘gold rush,’ the ‘automation rush,’ is now set loose!

Worry About the 99%; Wash. DC, 2020

David Ross meets with Director of Strategic Planning, US Armed Forces, General Arnold Shoenuer. This takes place at a tavern and restaurant where DC’s influential persons meet and discuss weighty matters. Government Services ensures the establishment is free of spying devices.

David comes to the tavern first and is allocated a corner wall seat – a very private area with high seat backs and background noise. Shortly, the General arrives. David rises and offers his hand. They shake hands.

David: “Hello, Arnold. Good to see you!”

Shoenuer: “Good to see you!”

Shoenuer takes the opposite bench, sits, and the two are approached by a waitress who takes their orders for a snack and some beer.

David: “Ray Lexar and I were talking the other day about some general trends we see. We wondered if you had similar concerns and if so how you expect to deal with them.”

Arnold: “I’m all ears.”

David: “Those of us on the business side of the country have been pressing the common folk pretty hard with the form of globalization we wanted and have pursued since the 1980’s. And automation, of all kinds, is also making a big impact. We’ve been able to keep wages down and workers unorganized. It’s been a good ride. It’s also plain as hell that real unemployment, the government’s U6 number, is going to rise dramatically in the coming decades, AND the simple truth is that we don’t have any use for that growing number of people. What do you and your people think about this?”

Arnold: “Well. Like you, we sometimes talk about it. In our formal planning we don’t address it as such. Rather, we consider scenarios where foreign populations, for whatever reason, become hostile to governments we either support or seek to eliminate. Where we seek to maintain a friendly government, we have a series of organized operations we try to apply according to the specific circumstances. We’re pretty busy, all around the planet, with this sort of thing – wherever people are poor or literally suffering in basically weakly industrialized nations. The frustration of a population that has known wealth, or which is subject to displacement by automation – has not been on our plate.”

David: “Would it be possible to study it?”

Arnold: “Yes. I’d like to. Maybe we could justify such study and simulations on the presumption that some other nation-state, say Germany or China, might begin to have some such troubles, and that they might seek to handle it either by working to share the benefits of advanced technology in a

socialistic fashion, or, on the other hand, by some nastier method such as immediate population reduction.”

David: “I see that we are on the same page here! Raymond is talking to some people in homeland security and in the pharmaceutical business. Would you like to be part of a more general group considering these matters?”

Arnold: “Yes – very much so. Count me in. I’ll have to let my superiors know about this, but that should not be a problem. I happen to know they will be sympathetic.”

David: “Good! We’ll stay in touch.”

David pays the bill and both men go their way.

Wall Street Buys Farm, 2020

A farm family near Rockford, Illinois is quickly falling into financial difficulty. The price of corn, maize, wheat and other crops has fallen in recent years as the price of farm machinery, seed, and chemicals has risen. In fact, Wall Street firms have bought out the suppliers – deliberately to raise prices of machinery and such, to force family farmers out of business. The ultimate intent is to own and automate all aspects of the agriculture sector of the US economy and establish monopoly control for the benefit of Wall Street.

A sparkling clean, black limousine pulls into the farmer’s driveway. The driver opens the passenger doors – permitting the lawyers representing Goldman-Agriculture to get out. They walk to the farm house front door. The farmer, a Mr. Benke, opens the door and lets the men in.

Mr. Benke: “Come on in.”

He leads the two lawyers to the kitchen table where they lay out their paperwork.

Lawyer 1: “We have an analysis of your farm for you to consider. It indicates that \$3,500,000 is the value of your farm, and that it is unlikely to be worth more in the foreseeable future.”

Mr. Benke: “\$3.5 million for 5,070 acres of the finest farm land on the planet! Do you think I’m crazy?”

Lawyer 2: “Take a look at the analysis. What do you find wrong with it?”

The farmer goes through the analysis, item by item. He occasionally asks what is included in a line item. He gets to the items anticipating the costs, over the next five years, of seeds, chemicals, and new machinery. And then he examines the projected market prices for wheat and corn.

Mr. Benke: “Your projections for supply costs and for the price of corn and wheat are absurd. Do you expect me to believe this?”

Lawyer 1: “Those are the prices for the next five years. Keep in mind we work in unison with Cargil, DOW, and the other suppliers. We now own John Bear, as you should know. The John Bear subsidiary was acquired precisely to develop automated farming.”

There is a small pause in the talking.

Lawyer 1: “Take the offer or leave it. We’ve got other farms to consider. We’ll find several who’ll sell. And when we set up our low cost operations, the price of all the small farms around here will go down and stay down.”

Lawyer 2: “Mr. Benke. Take the offer now or we walk.”

Public Spaces Monitored in Depth, 2021

Intelligent cameras are located almost everywhere in the US – all government buildings, street corners, store entrances, shipping docks, and in general, every place people traverse. The cameras are ‘intelligent.’ This means they and microphones and other devices are networked to processing nodes that analyze content for faces, voice characteristics, gait, license plate numbers, car type, color, and style – and more. All is transmitted to information banks for intelligent storage and various kinds of further analysis.

Three young men are standing and laughing outside a workout gym. One is bragging about having sex recently with a married woman. Her name is mentioned. The processing unit to which the microphone and high resolution camera are networked retrieves summary information on the male who is bragging. It uses his facial parameters and his voice characterization, accessing the NSA database of such, to identify him. It also retrieves the woman’s NSA data set using her name and some contextual information – in particular restricting the name search to married women in the general vicinity and of age suitable for sex. The total information in this recorded event is synthesized into an event file and queued for inspection by an analyst working for the NSA. This inspection is triggered because extra-marital sex might be involved. The information in this file will be linked to information regarding the recent whereabouts of the two identified persons. The claimed act might be verified or disproved. If true, it might be useful to the authorities in the future.

First Fully Automated Farm, 2023

We are deep into farm territory in Northwest Illinois. The sky is deep blue with some clouds. Storm clouds are far to the West. A work crew and equipment arrive at the farm sold in 2020 to Goldman-Agriculture, Inc. of Wall Street. A new type of farm operation is being installed.

A driverless truck turns off the main highway onto the dusty farm entrance. In the cab area, or small office space if you will, are two engineers. The rear of the truck contains a collapsed tower, poles, weather-proofed electronic cabinets of several sizes, cables, solar panels, and other stuff. Another cab-less truck with bulldozer and construction equipment follows the first truck.

They pull up to near the farm house and barn. The barn is empty of animals. Gas and electricity have been turned off. Furniture and other farm family belongings have been removed. It is after harvest, and the fields have been cut level.

The engineers jump out with tool bags. They quickly disconnect, and cap off, the gas and electricity connections to both buildings. Short range radio transmitters, sending caution messages, are mounted on the capped energy lines – to warn the automated demolition and construction equipment to stay clear.

Demolition machines map the house, synthesize a demolition plan, and proceed to tear it down – cutting and pulling and stacking the pieces nearby for the robotic removal services to gather, load, transport, and dispose of. They then turn to the barn.

Meanwhile, construction equipment has implanted sensing and transmitting devices around the farm periphery while removing barbed-wire fencing. That equipment also maps areas that could cause trouble for the automated tilling, planting, deweeding, and harvesting operations for which this farm was obtained.

The solar panels are arrayed and mounted where the farm house and barn once stood. High capacity, highly reliable batteries of long life-time are installed, along with the necessary conversion electronics – all underneath the solar panels. These will power future water pumps, pest and other monitoring equipment, navigation aids, and equipment for communicating with a property operations center.

The engineers monitor the automated work flow. They fly a survey drone on a grid pattern over the farm. The data is automatically checked against the real-estate paperwork (which is in electronic form). Detailed (0.2 cm resolution) photography is taken of the entire property. After a quick check by the engineers, these are communicated via direct satellite communications to corporate headquarters in Omaha, the headquarters of Goldman-Agricultural.

By late afternoon, their work is done. Automated farm machinery can now proceed up the dusty road and do the tilling, seeding, spraying, and all else in the seasons ahead.

The demolition and construction equipment packs itself onto the trucks. The engineers and trucks head back to home base – an hour's drive away. The engineers take a self-driving auto to the nearby tavern.

Engineer 1 Ralph: Holding a mug of beer: “Bill. Here goes to 5,000 acres, 300,000 bushels of wheat at \$10/ bushel production each year – all for \$2M of machinery investment and maybe \$150K of yearly expenses for equipment maintenance and product transportation. Estimating that seed and fertilizer is another \$150K you get a yearly expense of \$300K for \$3 million of revenue. That’s \$2.7M gross revenue a year for an investment of maybe \$4M in property, \$2M in construction, and \$2M in new machinery! Investment payback time is only about 3 years!”

Engineer 2 Bill: He is sipping his mug.

“Yeah! You and I are in the wrong business. And G-A is going to get hundreds of these farms in the area using just one local operations & maintenance facility. Not one farm is going to have a person on it. With all the handling and repair automation at the home base, there may be only a dozen techs and inspectors to handle hundreds of farms!”

Ralph: “We’re lucky to have jobs. But my God, the people that will be put out of work! Give this 10-20 years more and the further automation coming online, I don’t think you’ll need anybody here.”

Citizen Spies, 2023

There is fear among the privileged wealthy that unemployment due to corporate globalization and industrial automation will, eventually, become so burdensome on the general population that insurrection will be a likely threat. Many previously productive persons are unemployed. Yet some might be recruited to keep tabs on the more general population. The information so gained, can be correlated with, and added to, the electronic information archived and

scrutinized by the NSA. Several tens of thousands of informants will be recruited.

This scene, in a local Transition Office in Chicago, Illinois depicts a typical recruitment session. Paul is a recent university graduate in mathematics. He is having trouble finding work in industry and in the education system.

The Manager of the Transition Office and Dennis, a recruiter for a joint project between the DHS, the NSA, and the Chicago Police Department, approach Paul who is in the waiting area.

Manager: “Hi Paul. I’m the office manager, and Dennis here is a recruiter for a joint project between the Chicago Police Department and several Federal agencies. Dennis would like to talk to you about an opportunity.”

Paul: “Oh sure! Why not?”

All three go into the office interior and Dennis leads Paul to his desk.

Dennis: “The office manager has given me your resume, and I find it of interest.”

He points to the image of the document on the computer monitor.

Dennis: “What I do is recruit people for what we call a little ‘soft spying.’ What that means is we train fresh college graduates with your kind of background to go around to a number of places and just verify what we think are facts. Basically, you would be checking that information we’ve gained by other means is actually correct. In addition, we sometimes get leads to goings on that are important to local police detectives and even to national agents.”

Paul: “I get the general idea. Can you give me a specific example of the kind of check you are talking about?”

Dennis: “Sure. Sometimes we want an automobile with our camera in it focused on a building or an event. Or we may want someone to go to an open meeting of some sort and record the goings on. For this we have special eye glasses with a tiny camera and microphone, coupled by a radio link to a small data storage box that fits in a pocket. Almost always, it’s small, innocuous little stuff that just requires you to be in the vicinity of something. We don’t ask you to do things that are dangerous or are likely to be dangerous.”

Paul: “What would be the terms of the employment?”

Dennis: “We would train you. This schooling, in Quantico, Virginia, would be for about four weeks. You would receive pay from the day you sign up. You would be required to work for us for at least six months, and you would have to maintain secrecy about everything you did: this hire event, and all information you learned while working for us. If and when you find other employment, you have the option of continuing to work for us on a very partial basis, yet receiving a monthly stipend for your services.”

There is a pause in the conversation. Paul is pondering.

Dennis: “Think it over for a day or two if you need. If you have any questions, call me, this is my business card.”

Paul: “OK – I want to think about this. I’ll let you know.”

They shake hands. Paul leaves.

NSA DB of Gun Owners, 2023

A gun convention and market are being held at the yearly National Rifle Association (NRA) get together. This year

it's all at the Convention Center, downtown Denver, Colorado. The Feds have been installing high-resolution, color cameras virtually everywhere guns are used or sold: gun shows, at the display and purchase counters of gun shops, shooting ranges, and in department stores where guns and ammunition are sold. These cameras, together with devices recording voice conversations between salespersons and customers, and pressure measuring pads on the floors to estimate customer weight – are directly connected to the Internet-of-Things (IoT). The data collected goes straight to NSA permanent storage and processing operations.

At the huge NSA campus in Utah, a technician is showing Paul, a new hire, some of the process software. On one of the screens in front of the two (they are seated) the flow of communications between the Convention hall in Denver and the NSA is being shown in real-time (that is as it is actually occurring). The video frames, speech packets, and weight estimates are flashing by as sub-second impressions. The next screen shows a map of the convention floor. The technician clicks on a selling booth. Video and audio from the selected booth shows the salesman and the current customer. Also displayed is the weight of the customer as he shifts his feet and fondles a SK38 (Chinese version of the Russian AK47).

Paul: “Wow! And all of this is being stored and indexed?”

Technician: “Yes, this data can be accessed by date and time, location, the name of the salesperson, the name of the customer, and, if that firearm is purchased, by the serial number or other descriptive information concerning that automatic weapon. Moreover, a processing program I'll show you later examines all the kinds of information

obtained from this trade show, then produces linking information so that this scene can be examined by an analyst if this firearm or this customer is ever involved in suspicious activity. Also, we have processing programs running in the background that scan tons of information like this, searching for seemingly inconsistent data which a human analyst can then research to try to resolve!”

Paul: “What a place to work! And what a resource!”

Technician: “Yes, and something else. From this kind of data, and simple police and FBI reports, which we also store and process, we develop a huge data base of information showing every gun owner, where he or she lives, and what guns that owner owns. This data covers most firearms in the US. And we know most of the firearms that are not tracked are owned by these same firearms owners. The majority of truly invisible firearms, as we call them, are those owned by professional criminals. Those guns have been ‘laundered’ by multiple, untraceable transactions – or deliberately stolen for resale on the hidden underground crime market. But they are a fairly small minority. And we have good information on the criminal underground figures. The FBI can nab most of them whenever they get the orders.”

Paul: “Who gets to see this stuff? How is it used?”

Technician: “You guys at Homeland Security, the FBI, sometimes local police, CIA, and sometimes other special departments of government – such as the Secret Service.”

Automation Worries Investors, 2025

Amazon and the Pentagon have been demonstrating the potential for automation. Amazon had purchased Whole Foods (2017) with the clear intent to impose its automation

model on the entire food industry. Since then, investors have struggled to understand the application of automation technology to the full panoply of economic activity world-wide. Goldman-Slicks Investment Bank has called for a meeting of principal investors to be held at the Krump International Hotel in Washington, DC to help make the move to an automated economy go more smoothly.

The meeting opens with a speech about Amazon's aggressive acquisition of the small hard goods market and its purchase of Whole Foods. The speaker declares things are changing – the comfortable and stable times of manufacturing and selling products are over. A panel of so called experts is introduced and brought on stage. They blabber about the difficulty businesses will have in trying to automate their operations.

Investor 5: He is speaking privately to Investor 4 at this table. “These people are just making superficial generalizations. What we need is an organization that brings together the ‘players’ in the US to work in unison to properly structure and integrate automation efforts for our benefit. We might call it the: *Automation Research Institute*, or ARI. We ought to develop a broad but aggressive plan, then coordinate our individual investment efforts to make much of it happen.”

Investor 4: “I fully agree, let's do it!”

ARI is Established, 2026

This is the first meeting of the *Automation Research Institute* (ARI). It is being held in Detroit, Michigan. ARI had been conceived by two investors attending the Krump

International Hotel meeting in Wash. DC in 2025.
Strategists and technicians from the corresponding investor groups are now meeting to formally establish this planning and advocacy institution.

Investor 5: He was the prime instigator of ARI.

“We need a vision of where we want to go with automation, then a plan for getting there. The vision you collectively expressed to me, when I met individually with you, is on the projection screen.”

He faces the investors.

Investor 5: "Let's talk."

The projection screen shows the following:

US Population	30,000,000
Cities to be Automated	30
New cities	3
% transportation automated ..	100
% agriculture automated	100
% manufacturing automated ..	90
% military automated	98
% energy electrification	100
% energy pollution	0
% gas, oil used (versus 2026) ..	2
Target completion Year	2056

Investor 2 starts the discussion.

Investor 2: “Today, the US population is about 330 million. This says we'll have 30 million when automation is accomplished? What's going on here?”

Investor 5: "Yes. Some of you said 90% of the population will become worthless when automation becomes well established, others of you said 99%. For this discussion let's

presume 10% will remain useful – which implies roughly 30 million would be so. For now, let's not discuss how we get from 330 million people currently to that."

Investor 3: "This projection into the future implies you get automation of transportation and agriculture to 100%. That's not realistic. Some human participation and oversight will be necessary."

Investor 5: "You're correct. Let's change those to 95%."

Investor 2: "Energy and pollution goals look OK to me. We should have accomplished these a decade ago."

The investors agree.

Investor 1: "98% military automation looks like a wild guess. What does that number even mean??"

Investor 9: "It probably means that 98% of the military budget goes to the automated production of military devices and systems – which themselves operate automatically. 2% of the dollar amount goes to human participation in the overall military function."

Investor 5 looks at the group.

Investor 5: "Your faces tell me you all are in agreement – at least for the purposes of this discussion."

Investor 4: "Why 30 years to accomplish this? Seems arbitrary. It seems too short a duration to accomplish it."

Investor 9: He is the 16 year old son of the Investor 9 family's current Matriarch. "Not to me. I've often thought if there were a thousand families like ourselves, we could automate pretty much everything in twenty years or so. We ought to get our butts in gear and get going to make this happen."

Investor 5: "Any nay Sayers here? This discussion is a little too yesy, yesy for my decision making comfort."

A technician pipes up.

Tech 1: “I’d like to put things into perspective. What you are suggesting is super aggressive. There is an ancient parable that should give us pause:

A King wishes a pauper to do some service for him and asks what the pauper would require in return. The pauper points to a chess board and says he would like one grain of rice on the first square, two on the second, four on the third, eight on the fourth, and so on for the sixty four squares of the board. The King foolishly accepts. If each rice kernel is about 3mm by 1mm by 1mm in size, the King will owe the pauper a volume of rice that is more than 3 miles wide, 3 miles deep, and 3 miles high!

It’s too easy to think you can do something at the first thought of it. Reason demands you investigate thoroughly before committing. You are asking for re-engineering the economic system to produce goods and services – one that has been built and evolved over several hundred years. The kinds of things desired, designed, fastened together, and built in a complex, technical economy, are in the tens of millions. Manufacturing units, the factories that make this stuff, currently number in the many tens of thousands.”

The second technician picks-up from the first:

Tech 2: “What Tech 1 just said is true, but does not prove we cannot do what we intend. In fact, automation and disruption of the current economy is a certainty. His concerns merely show we have a challenging task to confront. We all know automation can and will be done. Our disciplined effort can make it happen sooner and better. ARI

can be a tremendous facilitator. The scope of our effort needs to include all of what can be done.”

Tech 3: “I agree. There are some simplifying aspects to building an automated economy. We know the current system is wasteful, duplicative, and inefficient. Just how many small variations of cars and trucks, kitchenware, clothes, furniture, stores, fasteners, and other things and places do we really need? Studies on the current economy say we could get rid of eighty percent of the variations in stuff – and over 75% of the places of manufacture and selling – and still get everything we need and want.”

Tech 5: “We can and should give priority to automation of the economy instead of fumbling and dilly-dallying into it like Amazon did. We need to give development of automation the priority it should have. We should view it like the space race of the 1960’s. The goal should be to automate the manufacture of essentially all things. Let’s unleash the imagination, creativity, energies, and money support to make it happen.”

Tech 5: “We can accelerate the automation of manufacturing. Take the best of the people who currently know how to make stuff, then get them together with the technical people who know how to automate. Task them to make the necessary automation.”

Tech 6: “Go after agriculture, and do it right now. Consider the staples: wheat, corn, maize, hay. When you see the rural farmers, each collecting \$100K to \$300K yearly profit from their 5,000 acres or so of such crops, you have to sense potential. Even now, you go past a field and see the farmer in his air conditioned harvesting or tractor cab doing a little driving but most often watching satellite TV. You have to sense inefficiency and unwarranted entitlement. Let’s help

the automation of this area along. And maybe we can get to the automated harvesting of cotton, apples, and other vegetables and fruits.”

Investor 5: “You get maximum progress when you experiment. Ultimately, you just have to do it! Plan a few city-like entities that can be built with say a hundred billion dollars and make them work using automation to the hilt. New cities can be planned and built – the Chinese have been doing it for decades. And we can rebuild significant parts of existing cities – those places we deem desirable for the future one hundred years. We investors will invest in it, but will have the help and assurance of government – which will heavily subsidize this ‘re-industrialization, rebuilding of America’ – as the common people will be told – using their taxpayer dollars. We can use the planning tools that every large corporation uses. We can use data and techniques that the Soviets used with their GOSPLAN. We can learn from what the US government did in WW2 to orchestrate the US economy. Let’s use Artificial Intelligence (AI). When you have a reasonably detailed plan that works well under computer simulations and withstands scrutiny by relevant experts, go build it. See what you run into.”

Investor 4: “Indeed, this is a start. Let’s purchase a campus of buildings to house this planning and engineering institute. This will be a huge technical and administrative endeavor. Let’s aim for a realistic plan for several small, highly automated cities in less than a decade.”

Organized ATM Heist, 2027

Unemployment is high. Policing, to protect the property of the wealthy, is brutal. A band of unemployed friends, in

Chicago, Illinois, puts together a scheme to heist an ATM which is next to, but detached from, a bank. Such a theft is difficult since there are heavy metal pillars separating the ATM from the bank parking lot, and since police and private cameras are located everywhere.

The six young men build a wood and metal battering ram, of the correct dimensions, in a garage. At first appearance, it doesn't look like what it is. Someone off the street, looking at it, would not know its intended purpose. It can be securely attached to a standard Ford F250 pickup truck in a matter of minutes. Per a planned time schedule, two of the young men steal a pair of truck license plates from a used car dealer's parking lot. Another pair steals an old F250, meet up with the first pair, then drive to a known secluded area. There they meet up with the other two of the team who drove to that site with their truck which contains the ram and other tools. They change the license plates on the stolen truck, and firmly install the ram into it. Long handled axes and other needed tools are also thrown in.

The six men put on masks and gloves, then drive the stolen truck to the bank. It is three in the morning. They quickly batter the ATM from its moorings, then use the axes to free it from its mounting and cut the electrical cables. They load the ATM onto the truck and drive back to the secluded area. The six of them unload the ATM and all equipment used in the heist, disassemble the battering ram, and change the license plates on the stolen F250 back to the original set. The stolen ATM and all tools used are loaded onto their own truck and covered with canvas.

The F250 used in the heist is returned from whence it was stolen. When she next goes to it, the owner will feel something is different about it, but will not know it was stolen and returned. She never reports anything to the police. The stolen license plates are folded, put in a bag with other garbage and thrown away as ordinary refuse. The men drive back to their garage. They pick apart the ATM, whose parts are eventually, but carefully, disposed of. The cash, some tens of thousands of dollars, is shared. They are never caught. The police are pissed off. The Feds at the Department of Homeland Security (DHS) and the FBI are informed.

The DHS is dissatisfied with the failure of the local police to identify and apprehend the culprits. A young and promising agent, Paul, is assigned to investigate what happened. He does so. He is now reporting to the Deputy Director of the DHS for the Chicago area:

Director: "Beyond the CPD (Chicago Police Department) report, what the hell happened? What did you find out?"

Paul: "The CPD ran into a number of dead ends that neither they, nor we, could have expected. Surveillance of the theft showed six masked individuals, their gaits, the Ford pickup truck, a license number, and the process by which the ATM was stolen. The theft was well planned. The battering ram was rotated into position and was quickly used to dislodge the ATM from its mounts. Three of the participants quickly disconnected it from the connecting cables and mechanical attachments, while the remaining three folded the ram back into the truck. The six of them then leveraged the ATM onto the truck. They all then drove off. No fingerprints, and no inadvertently dropped items were left at the scene for

examination. The individuals all had masks, gloves, and wore clothing hard to identify. An intense, strobed light source on the truck was turned on during the theft to interfere with the surveillance. There was virtually no conversation to record."

Director: "Why wasn't the path of the truck to the scene used to find where these people came from? And where did they go after the heist?"

Paul: "The F250 truck is like tens of thousands in the Chicago area. It must have been stolen, but then returned after it was used in the crime. A path search was conducted on the vehicle using data obtained as it left the crime scene, but our surveillance of it went 'dark' when it went into a large secluded area – an area where our surveillance is absent."

Director: "I presume the vehicle, when it again exited the secluded area, could not be identified?"

Paul: "Unfortunately, yes. A major highway, with exit and entrance, passes through part of that secluded area. There were too many F250s passing through our search window for them to be individually tracked and examined."

Director: "Paul, do you realize how much time, effort, and money we've spent to gain 'total information awareness' of what people do and when and how? And yet there are these 'holes' in our information that inhibit this kind of investigation! It's so frustrating."

Paul: "I know. Another omission occurred here – the tracking of the money that was in the ATM. The stolen money was not marked to enable future tracking of its use. A case like this really reveals these kinds of fault."

Director: "What can we do to stop this kind of crime."

Paul: "I've been pondering that myself. Manned patrol car response is too slow to track an escape vehicle, and wouldn't work where individuals merely flee the crime scene on foot or bicycle. Helicopter dispatch also is too slow. But I'll bet we could field a network of surveillance drones, each stationed near potential crime sites, that could immediately follow and track such perpetrators. AI could quickly dispatch and manage such drones."

Director: "We have money to do that! I'll get you in contact with our research and development department. I want you and that department to keep me informed."

Paul: "I look forward to that project, Sir."

Director: "Thanks for your work here."

Paul: "I appreciate being assigned to this interesting issue, Sir."

Security modifications are made so this particular kind of heist could not succeed again – not anywhere in the US. But desperation feeds both determination and imagination – many other versions of group, coordinated theft will still occur in the years ahead.

Buying the NW Side of Chicago, 2027

An investor, Donald Sturka, is meeting, in a coffee shop, with a typical rental property owner on the Northwest side of Chicago. He is offering to purchase the property owner's holdings in that part of the city. The owner's name is Jake. Donald has some paperwork with him: pictures, documents, etc.

Donald: "See these pictures Jake?"

Jake: "Yeah! Nice, attractive females – aren't they?"

Donald: “Yes. Most have husbands – or live-in boy friends – many of whom are associated with gangs – violence prone gangs.”

Jake: “Why are you showing me these pictures? Where did you get them?”

Donald: “I have pictures and videos of you entering the apartments of every one of them – when they were at home and their mates were at work.”

Jake: “So what?”

Donald pulls out some more photographs – each showing both Jake and a woman stark naked. In each, Jake is grabbing and sucking. His stick is fully erect.

Donald: “This is what. How do you explain?”

Jake: “Just how in hell did you get these??”

Donald: “Some of those ladies work for me. They told me you forced yourself on them, telling them if they complained you’d have their bosses fire and blacklist them. I figured there were others. So I had some friends get me complete data sets on all your tenants. These were the attractive ones. I went to talk to them. Many were willing to gather evidence.”

Jake: “So what are you after? Why did you want to meet with me?”

Donald: “You own one hundred rental properties here on the Northwest side of the City. I want to give you three million dollars cash to transfer their titles to me.”

Jake: “You’re crazy! They’re worth ten times that!”

Donald: “Not when half of them are empty and the other half about to be. For three million you can live nice. In return I want all 100 of ‘em and a little piece of paper saying you won’t sue for any reason and won’t tell who bought ‘em. Else I show these pictures to the husbands –

along with maps and pictures of where you live and places you frequent. Three million, Jake! It's a lot of money these days – and prices are going down.”

Jake: “I need to think about this.”

Donald: “You got until I get up and leave. If I leave before I hear a ‘yes,’ I’ll start calling the husbands.”

Jake is clearly very unhappy.

Jake: “OK – I’ll do it.”

Donald: “Be at my attorney’s office at 9am tomorrow morning. Here is his business card. And if, for some reason, I am physically unable to be there, certain packets of information will automatically be delivered to a number of persons.”

He gets up, and leaves. He purchases similar parcels of property from other property owners on the NW side. For now, he will rent these units and collect enough cash to break even. When the area is designated an official site of the rumored New World Order (NWO), he will be in the cat bird seat – even though he will donate much of the property to the project.

West Wing, Gun Restrictions, 2028

A meeting is held at the White House in the West Wing conference room.

The general public owns firearms that could enable some of the citizenry to threaten domestic policing strategies and operations. The meeting is to discuss elimination of those firearms. The hundreds years old liberal interpretation of the Second Amendment has become a real impediment to what is now necessary – removal of military class weaponry from

the public. The President, several Congresspersons, several State Governors, several big city Mayors, the head of Homeland Security, and several other government Directors are present.

The President asks the Director of Homeland Security to open the meeting with a statement of the meeting's purpose.

Director DHS: "Economic pressure on the citizenry is approaching the crisis level, and yet there is little we can do to ameliorate that pressure – presuming we continue our free enterprise economic policies. We are, consequently, about to contend with significant, and possibly even organized, illegal and violent behavior by significant portions of the citizenry. In order to conduct necessary police control of the population, with minimal risk to governance personnel, and to the citizenry as well, we need to remove weapons of military and police capability from the civilian population. The purpose of this meeting is to get this done. We are all here to get the ball rolling. Let's start with what the needed legislation has to include."

The projection screen shows a list of items which the public may not manufacture, purchase, transport, possess, use, or sell:

1. All automatic weapons and attachments that make weapons automatic.
2. Any type of munition that can penetrate regulation police body vests and helmets.
3. Any other munitions such as bombs, grenades, or other devices capable of inflicting injury or damage as would military weaponry.

Majority Leader, US Senate: “Of course, such items are legitimate for police and military use. Private security firms, if federally licensed, will also have access to such items.”

City Mayor: “It’s about time we passed this legislation.” All of the meeting members agree this legislation is needed and now is the time to do it.

President: “What’s the best way to get this legislated?”

Speaker of the House: “Not only has public sentiment been against the NRA (National Rifle Association) for some time, but now Congressional sentiment is also. I think we can do it. I suggest Homeland Security work with the House select committee on internal affairs and work out legislation acceptable to the corresponding Senate committee. To minimize NRA obstruction, we’ll not make any of this public nor bring this up to a vote until that is done. Also, let’s delay the introduction of the bill to the full body of Congress until the DHS, the NSA and the FBI reconcile their databases on gun owners and weaponry. This is so the FBI and local police can take action – after the legislation passes – but before any adverse gun owner reaction can complicate confiscation.”

FBI Planning Director: “I agree that the FBI will work with the NSA and Homeland to harmonize our databases before the legislation becomes public.”

Again, the group is in agreement. The participants request Congress to develop such legislation with all due haste, and to inform this group before it is released from the committees.

Summary of Interior Affairs, 2028

It is the late 2020's. The economic policies of the 1% have destroyed the livelihoods of perhaps one-half of the US population. Real unemployment (not reported by the US government) has been steadily rising during the decade. Corporate Globalization had been the driver of low wages, serious unemployment, and underemployment for decades. But now the primary reason is ever increasing automation of industry, agriculture, and retailing. Perhaps 25% of the working age population of the US is totally unemployed and sustained only by relatives, charity, and on the street scavenging and refuge.

The terrible employment reality, combined with the absence of a universal basic income (UBI), the lack of a single payer, universal coverage medical financing system, and the high cost of shelter and other necessities – all guarantee deep poverty for a huge and growing portion of the American citizenry.

But that is only part of the reality. Many of those having some employment are also living in hell. Males earning low wages cannot sustain families and cannot support wives. Husbands and wives cannot afford to have children. Those employed must often submit to multiple jobs, yet have no or inadequate medical insurance.

Most women who seek jobs need them. Those who are physically young and attractive are most likely to find work – but the terms are not good. Owners and managers want them in the workplace for a reason. Sometimes it is because attractive persons make for good contact with customers and better workplace morale. But often, the reason is the

potential for a successful sexual relationship by the owner or manager with the employee.

Women at work, including beautiful women, have to do as they are told. They learn to submit, submission becomes a habit. The owners and managers have social status greater than their husbands and boy friends. Sometimes the women are simply seduced. Sometimes they have a stark choice: bed with a superior at work – or get a pink slip. Managers know how to manipulate people and know how to cover their tracks. Excuses for termination are easy to find and document. Submission may be much easier than finding new work, particularly if they may be terminated, ostensibly ‘for cause.’

And employers play other games with employees. Companies that hire technical staff: programmers, engineers, and other professionals – have a bias against white males. They would rather hire a lower paid female, or a person from India who is not yet a US citizen. A person from India can be expected to never criticize his or her superiors – such insolence can easily result in a quick and permanent return to India. And women are less inclined to vigorously contest decisions made by bosses.

The work and reward system in the US is terribly unjust. Young people go to school to learn to be productive. Yet, for example, a graduating engineer is unlikely to be truly employed as an engineer unless he or she was in the top ten percent of the graduating class. Furthermore, it is a time of extreme change. Those who become work-place viable for a period of time will have their skills become obsolete in ten years or so. Yet it is up to them to reeducate themselves.

Corporate employers just dump such ‘obsolete’ employees and hire others who have more current skills. Another thing – the intellectual property they produce while they are employed is confiscated by their employers – the laws and court decisions in the US legitimize that theft.

The US ruling class has taken total control of the workplace and the governance of the nation. The 99% is essentially in a state of slavery and has been mind manipulated into acceptance of it. But that slavery is now so onerous that rebellion is becoming a possibility. A growing, but still small, number of the 99% are bitter and angry.

Farms Purchased by Wall Street, 2028

The farm purchased by Goldman-Agriculture, Inc. in 2020 and located in Northwest Illinois, near Rockford, Illinois and near the Mississippi river, was used as a test site to verify the suitability of such land for automated production of food. The 5,000 acre farm was made operational in 2023, was improved with ARI guidance in 2027, and now has had five years of operation, measurement, and evaluation. Early on, it was a recognized success. Production occurred with only minor surprises. The use of inputs (seed, chemicals) and production of outputs (harvested produce) occurred as expected. This success proved the more general application of such investment would be profitable and relatively risk free.

Two years ago, based on that success, approximately two hundred farm properties, averaging about 5000 acres in size, were purchased in the same county. This totals about one

million acres. They form a contiguous patch of rich farmland in the area of the original purchase.

Construction on much of the additional land has now been completed. The new farm space is organized more efficiently than was the motley collection of individual farms. New cross roads were constructed to better move equipment and harvest loads. Ponds and irrigation work have been constructed to better distribute water during times of drought. Navigation posts and stations have been optimally installed, and their communications links and positional accuracy tested.

Critically important, centralized facilities for self-driving tractors, combines, and crop harvesting equipment have been built and refurbished. These facilities also contain emergency electrical power generators, machinery parts, and repair facilities. Only a few human personnel should ever be required – and these have been provided for – in terms of housing, eating facilities, and an emergency medical station. Road and helicopter service are provided for. Enhanced by further automation, this region may one day become as void of humans as the Arctic.

Tilling and smoothing will occur in late August in preparation for winter seeding and seeding in the Spring of 2029. Contracts have been signed to provide some 50 million bushels of corn, wheat and other canable or packageable produce to the nearby processing plants.

Purchases, by Wall Street, of properties throughout Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Iowa, Kansas, and Nebraska are accelerating. Only uncertainties, related to the rapid obsolescence of automated machinery, have put some crimp

on this activity. That is, equipment redesign, in a period of rapid adoption and innovation, yields such large leaps of improvement from year to year – that buyers hesitate to make major investments – investments that rapidly become uneconomic as the newer, more efficient and more reliable machines become available. For example, why purchase a machine costing \$150,000 that works 500 acres per day and has a useful lifetime of 5 years, when one purchased a year later costs \$125,000, works 700 acres per day, lasts 7 years, and has additional reporting and better maintenance features?

Self-operating machinery is being constructed at the John Bear agricultural machinery manufacturing plants nearby. Those John Bear plants are themselves also rapidly undergoing automation related upgrades

This aggressive automation of agriculture will now proceed throughout the US. Not in doubt is that the production of staples is being highly automated. Farmers, of the two legged variety, are being removed from farming.

Speech to Police Superintendents, 2028

Public dissent is rising, authority is increasingly being disrespected and even resisted. Public protest is becoming a serious threat to governance. Theft and wanton destruction of property, and hatred of the 1%, is rising to levels the 1% and their agents consider a dangerous trend. A meeting of all the police superintendents of large and medium size cities has been called. It is being held in the large conference room of the main building of the Department of Homeland Security in the Washington, DC area.

Breaking the law has to be punished, and severely so. The population cannot be allowed to feel it can go unpunished. Liberal interpretation of the US Constitution had impeded what is now necessary police behavior – but Congress has recently made useful changes to the law concerning both ownership of weapons and allowable police behavior. Ownership and possession of military type weaponry is now clearly illegal, so confiscation can proceed. Illegal activity by members of the 99% can now be discouraged by more extreme and painful police action. Without weaponry in the hands of the 99%, insurrection will easily be suppressed. Wanton aggression against foreign populations, such as often pursued by regimes friendly to the US (in Vietnam, Laos, Latin America, Iraq, and many other territories) can now be directed to US citizens as necessary.

For decades, US police were largely free of punishment when brutalizing some of the citizenry. Witness the occasional shooting of black males for minor transgressions and lack of punishment of the police involved – even in the most egregious instances. In the late 2020's this police behavior is not only to be tolerated but deliberately encouraged and cultivated while pursuing law enforcement objectives targeting the bulk of the US population.

The director of Homeland Security is standing at the podium. He has been introduced and is about to speak.

Director of DHS: *“These are trying times, large numbers of people are unemployed. The reasons are many: labor is cheaper in other countries, US labor is not always properly trained to satisfy existing needs, and, above all, automation of industry, agriculture, and retailing is proceeding at*

breakneck speed. The trends are ominous – this is only the beginning of a likely decades long ascent into a future where most goods and services will be produced with little human labor.

Fact: in the United States of America, we currently have a surplus of population, people who are not needed and who are not useful. Anticipating the decades ahead, we have every reason to expect this reality to increase and substantially so. Without action on our part, the number of unproductive and useless will drastically increase. If not effectively suppressed, so will our civil troubles.

We cannot use force to remove these people from the US, they are mostly US citizens. Some may learn to become productive, but the vast majority simply will not. Hopefully, the vast majority of these will decide to leave the US, where they no longer have a useful purpose, and emigrate to other places where they may be productively assimilated.

However, we do require, and will continue to require, for reasons of national security and for the peaceful and proper functioning of society, that the laws of the land and local laws be obeyed. The strict enforcement of laws, federal and local, concerning vagrancy, violation of private and public property, illegal occupation of property, and threats to both the property and persons of law abiding citizens must be enforced and enforced vigorously and fully by the agencies of law enforcement in this country.

In recruiting its peace officers, law enforcement in the US has long given preference to those who have served their country in its armed services. Given the on-the-street usefulness of those both innately inclined and highly trained

to aggressively pursue their designated function, their recruitment should have high priority. Their deployment into areas of expected civil trouble should ensure that disobedience of authority, no matter how small in initial manifestation, is effectively suppressed.

The Department of Homeland Security has programs designed to help local police authority to better inform themselves of potential threats, and training and equipment that should result in better and more timely action to secure the peace. Funding for their local implementation is available. We highly recommend that local authorities make the fullest use of these. Thank you.”

Superintendent 1: “Looks like anything is OK in dealing with the 99%.”

Superintendent 2: “Yeah – absolutely anything and everything.”

Lubinskis’ Retire in Mexico, 2029

Immigration of US citizens into Mexico and the lower Americas is stimulated by extreme poverty in the US. This typical case is one example.

Sara and Henry Lubinski can no longer live in the US. Henry lost his job as store manager of a well known grocery chain when he was 62. He is now 65, their savings are depleted. His house sold for less than the mortgage remaining. His children cannot support themselves – forget supporting him and his wife. She has breast cancer, and he has serious heart trouble. His paltry Social Security pays about one-third of bare living expenses. He cannot get appropriate medical care because Medicare has been

diminished to where it pays only a fraction of the costs. Virtually no doctor will accept such patients without cash payment in advance of treatment. He and his wife have been advised by the Chicago Transition Office to emigrate to a country with lesser housing and other expenses. He is unable to travel to examine the possible places. Therefore he has relied on the opinions of some persons he knew in the Chicago neighborhood where he lived for 35 years. They suggested a certain site as being the least undesirable. The Transition Office will pay the air fare out of the US and deliver his Social Security to his foreign address, but only if he and his wife renounce their US citizenship. They are forced to accept the offer. The only alternative is to live as wandering homeless persons, begging, and examining garbage containers for salvageable clothing and food.

They fly to Guadalajara and take a cab to the chosen retirement home for US immigrants. They arrive at a row of long, cheaply constructed buildings built on an old ranch property. There is no grass, few flowering plants, and some cactus. It doesn't look like there is any central eating facility, nor a medical office. The beat-up cab dumps them off at the office which is at the end of the closest building and has a sign. The property manager comes out to speak to them. The cab drives off, leaving a trail of dust.

Retirement Home Manager: “Welcome to Las Pedros, Amigos!”

Henry and Sara look at one another.

Sara: “What have we got ourselves into. This place may not have air conditioning, or even running water.”

Retirement Home Manager: “You are Mr. and Mrs. Lubinski?”

Henry: “Yes. This must be the Las Pedros Retirement Home since you have our names. Please show us the facilities and our unit.”

Retirement Home Manager: “Yes it is. Let’s put your belongings in the office, then take a tour. There is some paperwork we can complete later.”

The tour reveals there is running water from the local well pumped from the local maintenance shed. There is a small, noisy, and old window air conditioner in their small 600 square foot unit, but electricity is intermittent. There is centrally heated hot water, but it is allocated by time of day. Residents can purchase satellite TV reception, and it does have US channels. A small van picks-up residents each morning and allows them to shop in a medium size mall located some twenty miles away at the outskirts of Guadalajara. There is a doctor there to service Las Pedros residents. The hospital in Guadalajara is expensive and requires cash up front, as does the cab to get them there.

Sara: “Henry, what have we got ourselves into!”

She starts to sob.

Henry: “What choice did we have?”

Chicago Police in Action, 2029

A homeless family with one teenage daughter and one teenage son has taken up residence below a bridge of an arterial street in the Portage Park district of Chicago, Illinois. The daughter is quite attractive, and so is the mother who is in her early forties. The bridge is over a medium sized creek. Such residency violates Chicago’s transiency laws, and rewards are given to those who report such violations. They have been reported to the police.

It is in the early hours of the morning. A police wagon slowly approaches on the service road next to the creek. Only its parking lights are on until it is a few tens of feet from the bridge. One of the two policemen gets out and approaches the make shift area where the family is sleeping. The second policeman points a search light to the area and turns it on. The family is awakened and scrambles out of the shack-like shelter. One of the males has a stick-like thing in his hand. The approaching policeman shoots him in the chest at close range. He then shoots the second. Little sound is made, the policeman's pistol has a silencer. The two women, half dressed, screaming and hysterical, stumble to the fatally wounded men. The second policeman joins the first and both rush to the women. Each grabs one, and with flashlights examine them first for weapons and then for suitability as captives. The women's clothing is scant. The police see everything. They've made a good hit. The women are handcuffed, then led to the wagon. Both are raped and then strapped into the holding area. An ambulance is called to collect and deliver the male corpses to the morgue. The wagon is driven to a large building on the Northwest side of Chicago which the police privately maintain as an act of charity for homeless and wayward women. There the two women are registered, given clothing, food, and a place to sleep – along with other women. They will be assigned manufacturing assembly line work to pay for their keep, and will be made available for companionship with 'off duty' police persons.

How Can This Be? 2029

The regional director of Homeland Security knows the local police, especially in the Chicago area, have gotten largely out of control. He asks Paul to tell him what is going on from the 'agent on the street' point of view.

Director: "Paul, you recently verified some observations of a small police raid on a homeless family in the Portage Park precinct. What can you verify for me?"

Paul: "Sir. It's more than a bit disgusting. That family living under a bridge under Narraganset Avenue was doing no real wrong. Turns out the father was an unemployed mechanic – the family had no place to go. The camps where you usually find the indigent are pretty hard on attractive women. This family apparently wanted to be by itself to avoid harassment. Some nosy, nearby resident reported them to the police. The patrol that was sent out consisted of two individuals who had both been 'soldiers of fortune' in the newly ignited violence in the Balkans. Both had been hired by Albanian forces who, as a matter of usual behavior, rape Serbian women. Almost certainly, these guys participated in such raids."

Director: "These are the kind of people police departments are preferentially hiring. Is that correct?"

Paul: "Yes. This kind of hiring has been going on with a frenzy ever since that DHS Director's speech to police superintendents last year."

Director: "And what's this I hear about some of these police organizing a 'Home for Wayward Women' to keep female captives?"

Paul: "Yes – a number of patrolmen I've talked to have seen women taken there in official vehicles. The patrolmen who

bring captives to the compound and who organized labor outsourcing to support it – also make visits to it, just as if it were a 'red light' establishment."

Director: "I know of no official sanctioning of this. Those at my level are keeping hush, hush about anything they know."

Paul: "I'm not surprised. The kinds of patrolmen I knew years ago would have nothing to do with abusing unfortunate but ordinary people. To do the kind of suppression of the unemployed now necessary, requires behavior only the most selfish and immoral among us can do."

Director: "You're saying there is nothing we can do?"

Paul: "If we stop this behavior, who is going to intimidate the growing population of unemployed. And if those millions of people get it into their heads they can organize, participate in massive demonstrations, and begin occupying buildings and stealing food – what is going to stop them?"

Director: "I see it that way too, Paul. I was just hoping you had some other way of dealing with it."

Paul: "I wish I did. I've wracked my brain on this. We're on a slippery road to Hell. How you get off, I don't know."

Director: "Anyway, thanks for your thoughts on this."

Crackdown On Gun Owners, 2030

The unjust distribution of wealth crisis is becoming ever more serious. Those who have guns have strongly tended to be the survivalist types who also believe in total responsibility for the well being of one's self. That belief is breaking down. There is an increasing tendency of gun owners to understand that the very wealthy, the corporate types, the ruling class, are the real problem. The US ruling

class judges it is time to remove serious weaponry from these people.

In 2028, both houses of the US Congress easily passed bills making the possession and purchase of armor piercing ammunition and rapid fire firearms illegal. The US President immediately signed them. The laws stipulated stiff penalties for violators. But local law enforcement, the Department of Homeland Security, and the FBI hesitated to confiscate the weaponry in the hands of the general population. Now the mass media announces that serious weaponry can no longer be sold and will soon be confiscated. A large crowd of men in hunting garb are gathering in front of a large sports and gun shop in Milwaukee, Wisconsin. Their pick-up trucks are parked in the parking lot in front of the business.

Hunter 1: Speaking to some dozen men just outside the front door. “How do you men feel about what the traitors just announced?”

The Crowd: “F#%@ them bastards. Let’s get some ammunition and other supplies before the Feds clean this shop out.”

The men go in. AK47s, armor piercing ammo, rapid-feed magazines, and virtually everything else that used to be legal are still on the shelves or behind the counters. The men spread out. Some empty the shelves into shopping carts. Some confront the clerks behind the gun counters – demanding to examine the more powerful weapons which are now outlawed. The clerks balk – not knowing what they should do. In fact, they were told by the shop owners that

they should not remove such firearms from the display cases until further notice.

Counter Clerk: “I’m truly sorry gentlemen, but I’m under strict orders not to remove these from their cases.”

Hunter 2: “If I don’t have that slightly modified AK-47 in my hands in less than one minute, I’m going to break the case open with your head.”

The clerk shakes and babbles, then fumbles for the key to the case. He clumsily unlatches the automatic rifle and lets the hunter grab it from him. A group of men collect near the check-out counter. The check-out clerk waits there anxiously, not sure what he should do. The check-out isle quickly fills up with men intending to purchase items which are illegal to sell, to purchase, and to possess.

Check-out Clerk: “I’m sorry but ... “

Hunter 1: “Here’s cash for these items. Get going. Ring-up the stuff I just put on your counter. And make it quick, I’ve work to do!”

The other men in line crowd up to the front – to the back and sides of him. The check-out clerk is shaking, his hands are cold and wavering. He can hardly press the correct buttons on his cash register – but he does pass the laser scanner over the product UPC codes.

Outside, police, hiding in some of the trucks in the customer parking lot, emerge and go to either side of the front doors to the business. They wait for the hunters to exit from the store. Police cameras are in action. More swat vehicles are waiting, just out of sight, for a call to come into the unfolding scene.

Hunter 1: “OK boys. I see all of you have checked your items out. Let’s get to our trucks.”

They exit the front door. As they exit they see assault rifles pointed at them by police in dark blue flak jackets.

Megaphone: “Stop! Stand in front of the doorway. Put your hands up and keep them there. You are under arrest!”

They do as they are told. They are handcuffed and individually identified. Tags with their names are placed around their necks. Everything is photographed and video recorded. The purchased items are tagged as to who bought them, then hauled off as criminal evidence. Each of the purchasers of illegal material is led to one of several police vans which take them to the police station for formal booking and detention. The vehicles involved in the illegal purchases are confiscated and taken to the police station. Paperwork is initiated to transfer their titles to the local police department. For each offender, a patrol vehicle, with a police officer and a partner, proceeds to the offender’s residence. The following is typical.

The police vehicle pulls up to the residence. The patrolmen go to the front door and one of them presses the door button. A woman opens the door. The officer presents her with a generalized search warrant – which indicates permission to examine the residence of each suspect apprehended at the gun shop.

The officer then enters the premises with his partner. They proceed to check the house for illegally possessed firearms, ammunition, gun servicing tools, and the like. If such items are found they are tagged and taken for evidence and likely

for destruction. And if such items are found, any adult family members are considered accomplices, then arrested, handcuffed, and taken into custody down to the police station. The presumed accomplices are handled roughly. Some claim that the more attractive of the arrested women seem to disappear, to become missing persons, in this process.

Similar operations and procedures are carried-out throughout the US. This series of raids and follow-up sweeps will result in many hundreds of thousands of arrests and over a million confiscated firearms. The gun owners of America will scream bloody murder about this action – which was coordinated between the FBI, Homeland Security, and local police departments. Many gun owners will decide to move to remote areas, where they think they will be free to exercise what they think are their second amendment rights.

New Voting System, 2030

The two virtually identical US political parties, each appealing to different parts of the population, almost always win the elections. The candidate with the most financial support almost always wins. The electronic voting machines at the polling sites have software that is not publicly published. A very substantial portion of the population is either homeless or living in communal circumstances. Thus registration is questionable and problematic. Suspicions abound that the system of voting is seriously rigged.

Both houses of congress have proposed a ‘Voting Solutions Act’ to simplify the system and make it more responsive to

the ‘useful’ people in America – those who have verifiable residential addresses and documentation (such as birth certificates). This act replaces the prior system of voting with a totally US Postal Service mediated method whereby (1) properly registered voters are mailed a ballot two weeks before the official date of voting and vote tabulation, and (2) the voters return their marked ballots by mail. Automated ballot scanning machines provide the vote totals. The bill calls for implementation no later than the 2032 election occurrence. The bill passes both houses by a simple yeay or nay procedure, and is immediately signed by the President.

Investors Contemplate the Future, 2031

The more philosophical (and intelligent) of the billionaire investors realize something very significant is transpiring. Human society is entering a new era – one in which the genie of technology has not only been released out of the bottle, but is causing havoc with the old human order. The implications go far beyond the issue of automation. What has been, what is, and what should come into being – has to be examined. There can be no preparatory action for the future without analysis of the possibilities – then agreement on what outcome these important people want. Several of these investors meet for a general discussion in a large hotel near the Beltway in Washington, DC.

Investor 5: “Automation is breaking the 6,000 year old dependency between masters and slaves. It’s obvious technology is changing, or is allowing us to change, the relationship that we, the privileged and in control, have with the remainder of the population. Since machines can now do

the functioning of that remainder, what should change in this relationship?”

Investor 1: “Let’s think about the functioning that the ‘remainder,’ as you call them, perform. A quick list is:

- They provide the labor to produce things made in our corporations.
- They consume much of the product and services our corporations produce – thus providing economic ‘demand’ for the system we currently dominate.
- They provide the human material required to fight wars for our defense or which we initiate for various other purposes.
- A small portion of this remainder provides the ‘professional’ services we require: science, medical, engineering, teaching, arts, education, entertainment.
- They provide a large pool of attractive females for our pleasure and reproduction.
- They provide an ego function. We can compare ourselves, favorably, against them.”

Investor 2: “Let’s list the negatives this ‘remainder’ has for us:

- They consume scarce resources. Large scale pollution of the ecosphere occurs because they exist.
- As huge numbers of them become useless, they become a burden to us (in the form of law violations, threats to order, and needed sustenance and medicine).

- They could come to view themselves as equal to us. They might come to effectively compete with us for political power and access to the more attractive females.
- They might revolt against us, take away our privileges, and punish us for real or imagined transgressions against them.”

Investor 5: “So how should this ‘remainder’ be dealt with as automation makes the vast majority of them unnecessary?”

Investor 3: “To answer that, first take a look at the list (above) of the functions they provide. Automation diminishes or eliminates the need for their labor and military use. We can continue to use and keep the various professionals and the attractive females. In the new, automated system we don’t need ‘consumers’ other than ourselves and those we choose to keep. We can dismiss the ego gratification function as being of little importance.

Bottom line. We have two basic choices. Either we share the benefits of automation with them, or we eliminate those of them that are ‘unnecessary.’”

Investor 5: “Why not share the benefits?”

Investor 3: “I think that is unwise. My reasons? These:

- The resource consumption on the planet becomes too great – and for no good purpose.
- It’s dangerous. That irrational majority will, given affluence, begin demanding political power – power to deal adversely with us.
- We have no ‘moral’ obligation to tolerate their existence. They are the losers and they have lost.”

That is, while they become useless, their negatives remain. It's not a good deal for us. We would be fools to decide that."

The group seems to agree.

Investor 5: "So the conclusion is clear. We eliminate the useless as automation makes them so."

All are in agreement.

Investor 5: "We're not done yet here boys! When these undesirables are gone – however we decide to do that (that's a subject for another meeting), what form of society do we implement?"

Investor 2: "It doesn't look like we will have a society divided into classes. Do we anoint a Supreme Council – or should we share the power to govern among those who survive?"

The group says 'share.'

Investor 5: "Incredible! I never thought I'd hear the words 'share the power' spoken favorably with this group. But I wholeheartedly agree."

Investor 5: "This meeting has been successful. We are adjourned."

Chicago City State, 2033

Planning for the building of city states in the US has been conducted. Detailed plans for one in California and one in Chicago have been produced in the past several years.

Investors interested in the project, and ARI, have lobbied government to help start these projects. Money is one aspect of course, but the issue of jurisdiction, by current layers of government, over the new and democratic entities, has also been a hurdle.

The jurisdiction issue is resolved by making each city state a corporation under the jurisdiction of both the local and federal governments. The investors control the corporation. They decide, as is their prerogative, to internally organize the corporation as a democracy, with neighborhoods issuing policy directives to managers selected by the corporate owners. Thus, legally, the internal, democratic operation of the incorporated city state is merely its corporate business.

Investor 5: “Finally, we got this going.”

Investor 4: “I can hardly believe it.”

Investor 5: “Tomorrow, we get the wrecking crews going into the Chicago property.”

Lobbing for City State Handouts, 2035

The intentions of the Ruling Class are becoming well-formed. They are starting to understand what they need to do. Pilot city states have been started and are proceeding satisfactorily. What is needed now is commitment from government to provide immense funding and other support to the investors as they establish a prototype (proof of concept) networked chain of several city states, throughout the US, in which the upper classes will develop an automated economy serving themselves. Officers of the Federal government agree in principle with the ambitions of the most vocal and influential of the Ruling Class, but the great body of the federal establishment – Congress and the executive departments – must understand this new highest priority and adjust their marching orders accordingly.

ARI has published a nationwide plan for ‘Rebuilding the USA’ by rebuilding major parts of America’s big cities. This

plan looks a lot like a blueprint for city states, but is not described to the public as such. Rather, the plan claims to be all about reconstructing the existing metropolitan areas. Also, the plan specifies a huge effort to develop automated production tools that look like science-fiction. Many specific projects were taken from NASA and DARPA plans to build nearly self-sustaining cities on the moon, Mars, and the moons of Saturn and Jupiter.

A conversation takes place between a professional lobbyist and Congressperson in Washington, DC:

Lobbyist: “So, Congressman (or woman), you and your family do want to have one of the residences in the cities of the future – don’t you? Or would you rather be on the other side of the wall?”

Congress Person: “You people are asking for a lot. You want huge amounts of money, yet it is not clear who is going to benefit. I’m told by my staff that the totality of people to occupy the planned facilities is only some twenty or so million persons. How can I request taxpayer money from two hundred million to pay for that? And why this big chunk to fund ‘super-automation’ – the kind where automation is used to replace even more people and create yet more and better automation – in a self-sustaining and ever growing cycle?”

Lobbyist: “You very well know it is the technician and managerial class that will occupy this new construction, and these are the people that will actually be taxed. We need to tell them that. And in the short-term, there will be a big boost to the small fry who are desperate.”

Congress Person: “Let’s see how the others among us feel about this.”

Lobbyist: “Good. You know I’m talking with many of them. Also, the military wants this to go forward. Let’s talk again soon.”

Congress Person: “Thanks for visiting.”

City State Investor’s Tour, 2036

Development plans for a highly automated future have been agreed upon by a group of interested investors. The several square mile area northwest of Grant Park in Chicago has been cleared, leveled and had its utility infrastructure installed. Much of this work was performed by automated construction machinery. Several residential buildings have been built using automated machinery designed and manufactured per the ARI project. Major investors in the project are being given a tour. One nearby building is partially built and the construction methodology is clearly on display. The tour party saw construction movies showing the machinery and techniques used. Handouts were given presenting a map of the complex as it will look when completed. It shows both scheduled and actual staging and completion dates.

The tour party exits the robo-van which has stopped between the building under construction and a finished building some one hundred meters away. All party members are wearing hard hats.

Investor 5: “I want to know what’s in these residential buildings.”

Proj.Eng: “Well – the building on the right is twenty six floors high. Each of its twenty residential floors has twelve very comfortable apartments, each of some 4000 square feet in floor area. Every fifth floor is dedicated to some

community function: one for meeting rooms, another floor is an exercise area well equipped with every kind of workout machine. There is a medical services floor. Another level is devoted to resident work shops for crafts, wood working, art and music, and a multipurpose laboratory suitable for technical schooling. Each such community floor has a utility area containing water tanks, pumps, and general maintenance access. The bottom floor has shopping, and a swimming pool is below ground level. So is the robotic services staging floor where the automated laundering, residence cleaning, and other robotic services are stationed and maintained. The building is of concrete, steel, and glass curtain, has reliable fire suppression, extensive provision for communications, two sets of four electrically operated elevators, and two fire resistant stair cases. Each apartment has an external porch. The roof has solar power, a helicopter pad, a mini-park, and provision for gardens. All in all, there are 240 residences. As a side note, the elevators use AI – they recognize you, and you tell them where you want to go!”

Investor 5: “OK – so tell me about the construction going on here.”

Proj.Eng: “When finished, the building on your left will be virtually identical to the partially occupied building on the right. Note there are no cranes here. All construction material and components are lifted by the machinery you see on the side of the building.”

Investor 5: “I see that construction has taken about twice as long as I’ve seen for similar sized properties in the past.”

Proj.Eng: “That’s correct. Our objective is to verify that we can build with virtually no on-site nor factory use of human labor. Thus long, slow execution time was acceptable, and it

permits us to build in smaller steps than previously typical. This in turn permits lighter loads and the use of more common types of lifting and moving equipment. Do you see the elevator on the building to the left. Right now it's lifting a structural member for the next floor. In past construction we would have used a crane requiring a human operator, and we would have used heavier, bigger beams to speed-up construction. Also, those beams would have required human labor to position and fasten."

Investor 5: "What innovation has occurred here?"

Proj.Eng: "What's truly new is the melding of two new architectural concepts. The first is that space and material do not have to be minimized. The second is that we've modularized like crazy. We have designed these buildings to last hundreds of years – and we have provided adequate spaces for the various utilities (like water, sewage and electrical conduits) and for easy maintenance and upgrade access. This means that modular pieces (such as walls, floor sections, piping, elevator components, water tanks and pumps, and appliances can easily be installed and replaced."

Investor 5: "What disappointments did you have?"

Proj.Eng: "None very serious. The biggest annoyance I've had is probably inherent to this kind of project. And that is this: when we use a new, automated machine, we often quickly realize that something far better is possible. You only find this out after you've used it a while, and then it's too late to get that better version you now know how to specify."

Investor 5: "So what are you going to do differently as we build up this entire region?"

Proj.Eng: "We've asked for the improved automation I've just told you we wished we had for this one. Also, we are

asking for improved appliances. Had we better valves, bearings, motors, and controls in these – we could have far longer lasting washing and drying machines, refrigerated food lockers, air conditioning, and so on.”

Investor 5: “How much human labor did it take to build this building?”

Proj.Eng: “Almost none. Virtually everything was machine delivered, loaded, and fastened. We used humans to inspect some plumbing and wires in connection boxes. Also, humans do a little clean-up and touch up. That’s not counting the clearing of the old buildings that used to be at this site, nor the rooting out of the old infrastructure of sewers, water conduits, access ducts, and so on. Also, we had engineers here to evaluate the deep soil and rock structure to ensure our weight bearing piers are long-term adequate for these structures.”

Investor 5: “If I limited you to N number of laborers total on the next new building, what would N be?”

Proj.Eng: “I’d say five.”

Investor 5: “Who’s living in the finished building over there?”

Proj.Eng: “The architects and engineers who built this. I’m one of them.”

Investor 5: “I’m gonna buy one of these apartments – one with a view of Grant park and the Shedd Aquarium.”

Anna Goes Shopping, 2036

A woman is grocery shopping. She is navigating the aisles, pushing a grocery cart, occasionally examining her shopping list, and here and there plucking an item off the well stocked shelves. She is very attractive, and is well

dressed – as befits her station in life – for she is a medical doctor and the unmarried daughter of a very privileged person – who, for now, we’ll merely call Investor 3. She turns into the feeder aisle, at the rear of the store, and sees a group of firemen in uniform. They appear to be doing some shopping for their fire station. One of the men is quite young and is very handsome. He is muscular, trim, straight of back, and his manly but boyish face is crowned with a full head of slightly curly and sandy colored hair. The name tag on his chest gives his first name: Andy. As she gazes at him, he notices her and gives her a quick, friendly smile – then continues to converse with his companions.

Anna, that’s her first name, leaves the store with her purchased items. She notes the station number 5 on the fire truck parked at the rear of the parking lot. That station is just up the street.

Later that day, she stops by the fire station. One of the firewomen, Jennifer, asks how she might help her.

Anna: “Hello, I’m a MD and have a question you might help with.”

Jennifer: “Sure, I’m the station supervisor. Let’s go to my office.” Anna is seated in front of Jennifer’s desk.

Anna: “Some of my patients ask how they should dispose of unused medicines, needles, and potentially dangerous or ecologically damaging substances. My colleagues seem uncertain about this. What do you suggest?”

Jennifer: “It depends. If it’s illegal drugs or firearms related material – then it should be turned over to the police. We might seem a natural depository for flammables, but we are not able to handle such stuff. You generally have to go to the

refuse dumps – but they are fussy as well. I’m sorry I can’t be more helpful, but we are not funded to handle refuse.” Anna notices a framed picture of the fire crew at this station. Jennifer sees Anna’s interest.

Jennifer: “That’s our full crew.” She takes down the picture and shows it to Anna.

Anna: “This fellow, Andy. I saw him earlier today. What can you tell me about him?”

Jennifer: “Yes – that young man is something else. All of us ladies like him – and he’s good – if you know what I mean. He’s a bit mysterious. He’s not full time. He must be wealthy – or something. We call him in when one of us regulars can’t make it to work – if he’s not busy. He’s also part time with the police and is a MD as well – where, again, he practices on a substitute basis. And he seems to know all the City Commissioners.”

Anna: “Well – that certainly is interesting. It appears I need to investigate this disposal matter further. Thank you for your time and information.” Jennifer shows Anna the way out while mentioning that Andy will be patrolling the streets the next several days as a policeman and will not be at the fire station.

Policeman’s Job – 99% Boredom, 1% Terror

It is very early morning, about 2am. Officer Kendrick is driving a patrol vehicle, and his partner Officer Aldren is riding shotgun in the passenger front seat. They are stopped at a red traffic light as the light turns green. A red Toyota flashes by, across the intersection. Aldren flips on the flashing lights and siren as Kendrick turns right and accelerates. The Toyota soon pulls over into a mall parking

lot. The patrol vehicle pulls up to the back of it. Aldren walks over to the driver side of the Toyota. He sees only one person in the vehicle. The driver lowers the window. Aldren tells the driver to get out of the car, and he backs away and a bit to the rear. He tells the driver to lean against the rear door so he can search the man for any weapons or contraband. He finds no weapon. But there is a small, unfamiliar device in the man's shirt pocket. It is marked: 'US government Property, Top Secret.' Aldren quickly puts it into the shirt pocket of his uniform. Suddenly, a person jumps up from the Toyota back seat floor and is holding a handgun. Officer Kendrick is the first to notice and honks the patrol vehicle horn as the gunman starts to pull the trigger. Aldren turns and jerks slightly sideways. The gun fires. Officer Aldren falls, his head bleeding. The driver jumps back into the car, and the Toyota lurches forward and speeds away, tires screeching. Kendrick is on his radio. Kendrick: "Officer down. Red Toyota heading west on Greenville Avenue." Kendrick applies pressure to the side of his partner's head to limit the bleeding. A military vehicle roars by, apparently in pursuit of the Toyota. Seconds later the sound of an approaching ambulance is heard.

Emergency Room, 2036

Anna is on duty. She has been told an officer on duty has been shot and has a head wound. She sees an officer on a stretcher quickly but carefully brought in. He is deposited on an emergency room operating gurney as Anna and her team converge on the patient. She is aghast! It is Andy, and the side of his head is awash in blood. She holds her surgically gloved hand to her covered mouth. She feels the

side of his head. She is immediately relieved there is no entry wound through the skull. But several blood vessels have been severed. She and her team conduct temporary repairs. A CT scan of his head is made. Luckily there is no visible damage to his brain. He will have a scar on the left rear of his skull, but it will be covered by his handsome head of hair. She lingers by him after the team completes its work. His policeman's clothing is on a table at the side of the room. A device has fallen out of his shirt pocket and is partially covered by a piece of clothing. She uncovers it and examines it. It reads: 'US Government Property, Top Secret.' She looks around. No one is looking at her. She quickly puts the device into her pocket.

Andy Recovers, 2036

In the days that follow, Anna keeps tabs on his progress. She even acts as his nurse. A qualified plastic surgeon has operated on the patch of skin that the bullet had traversed. It is the day after that surgery, in the early afternoon, that he becomes conscious. He recognizes her from the grocery store encounter.

Andy: "Am I in heaven, or what?"

Anna: "I wish we both were. I can't believe you were not killed." She cries.

Andy: "I'm damned glad I'm here with you, my lady. What's your name?"

Anna: "I'm Anna."

They tell each other about their backgrounds. Both are from wealthy, influential families. Both are physicians who want more from life than professional work. He does fire fighting and police work to connect to people in general – and he,

together with some friends, operate a DNA analysis business – servicing both law enforcement and medicine. She works part time substituting for physicians who cannot come to their usual duties – and she volunteers for substitute elementary school teaching and other work serving people. They are two of a kind.

Andy: "May I ask you a favor? There is an object in the shirt pocket of my uniform. Can you retrieve it – or find where it is?"

He says this while looking around the room to see that no one else is listening. Anna pulls it out of her pocket.

Anna: "Is this what you're looking for?"

Andy: "Thank God! I removed that from the driver's pocket – thinking it had something to do with his frantic driving. Something is very suspicious about all this, not only about the pair that shot me, but about what they were up to. I really want to know what that device or package, or whatever that thing is, is all about – and I don't want the authorities to get it under their control until I do. Please keep it until I'm out of here and we can get together." Those are magic words to Anna. They mean he will be with her.

Anna: "I will."

Several police officers knock at the patient room door. Anna leaves, and they enter. As she escapes down the corridor, she hears happy male banter about his escape from death.

Later in the afternoon a middle aged man comes by. His nearly full head of hair is heavily graying. There is a resemblance, in his face, to Andy's. He hugs Andy. Andy is happy to see him.

Andy: “Dad, am I glad to see you! How did you find out about this?”

Dad pulls his visitor’s stool real close to his youngest son. He speaks to him in a quiet voice to avoid being overheard.

Richard Aldren: “The Director of Homeland Security called me, indicated you were one of the officers involved in a very serious situation, which he then described. You have really got yourself in the middle of some nasty business.”

Andy: “Dad. What are you talking about?”

Richard Aldren: “The two suspects you and Officer Kendrick encountered were being pursued by a military police vehicle – the one speeding by while he was busy applying pressure to your wound. AI, continuously monitoring the employee parking lot at the army’s Biological Warfare Research Center, detected an anomaly which alerted security personnel – who then dispatched a hot pursuit for the red Toyota. The anomaly was this: an employee exited the building and went to his car. But rather than entering the driver’s seat, he stooped down, put a package onto the asphalt under the driver’s seat, then drove away. Then the red Toyota parked in that spot, the driver opened his door, and reached down to retrieve the package. The driver then waited several minutes before exiting the parking area and merging onto Greenville Avenue. AI immediately sent a red alert to the security department – identifying the originally parked vehicle in the parking lot and the employee who owned it. That employee was expected to deliver a very important package to the Center for Disease Control (CDC) a few miles away. The implications of what AI observed caused the security people to issue the urgent call for pursuit. Your and Officer Kendrick’s report about stopping the red Toyota, and the

following unusual progression of events, were immediately communicated to the pursuit vehicle.”

Andy: “Wow!”

Richard Aldren: “About a mile down the road, the pursuit vehicle closed in on the Toyota, and another patrol vehicle blocked the road ahead. The Toyota turned into a side street and stopped. The gunman who shot you then shot the driver in the head, then in the heart. As the military pursuit vehicle stopped behind the Toyota, the gunman then put the barrel of the handgun into his mouth and pulled the trigger.”

Andy: “May I ask. What was in the package?”

Richard Aldren: “It wasn’t found. A search was conducted along the pursuit route. It could have been discarded anywhere, including over a bridge railing into the Potomac river. It’s still being searched for.”

Andy: “Dad, can you tell me what was in that package? That is, what was I almost killed for?”

Dad leans closer to his son.”

Richard Aldren: “It’s top secret. What’s in it is material, which CDC was to test and analyze, material intended to be used sometime in the decades ahead – to solve a problem that we, of the upper class, need to solve.”

Andy: “Does this problem pertain to too many ‘useless people’ in an age of widespread industrial and other automation?”

Richard Aldren: “Son, you are starting to have some very dangerous thoughts. This is as much information as I dare give you.”

Andy: “Dad. There is something else I want to ask you. I’ve met this lady, Anna. She’s a physician here. Could you probe her background for me?”

Richard Aldren: “I already have. I noticed her interest in you and decided to investigate. She’s as clean as a whistle. And I see why you have an interest in her. Also, I know her father – he too is a trusted ‘insider.’”

Team Anna and Andy, 2036

It is days after Andy's near death experience, and he is deemed able to leave the hospital and go home. Anna has volunteered to transport him home and get him settled. He is not to exert himself in any fashion, and needs to keep water and unnecessary contact from the healing part of his scalp. She needs to deal with him as if he were a hapless younger brother, and he is happy to receive that royal treatment. Sleeping is probably the biggest concern – he might roll over, pulling the bandages, and opening up the wound around the stitches. They are setting up his place so she can stay and watch over him. While he shows her the kitchen, the contents of his pantry, where the towels are stored, and the like – they talk.

Andy: “Anna, I think you know I want you – and pretty badly. And I suspect you want me too.”

Anna: “Yes. But there is going to be no sex until I see that your wound is fairly well healed and can withstand some pulling and rubbing. I’ll redo your bandages in a couple of days to check your progress. I expect it’ll be about a week before we can get that intimate.”

Andy: “As much as I want you, I can wait. But I do want to hug and kiss you now – please.”

Anna: “OK.”

They do so. He actually cries a little. He doesn’t want to let go, and neither does she.”

Andy: “I want you to look over me tonight – right next to me in bed. I promise not to try to take you – until you tell me it’s OK. Is that alright?”

Anna: “Yes. I like being close to you.”

They look at one another some more. Neither wants to wait.

Anna: “It’s almost bed time. I’ll bet we can do this very gently – and without damaging your repaired wound.”

They head to the bedroom, undress, put on shower caps, and shower together. Two people who want one another very terribly become one.

That night, they are ready to sit in bed, both in pajamas pulled from his wardrobe. They talk:

Andy: “Let’s look at that package you saved for me.”

It is a sealed package of several vials. Andy opens it up. There is a warning – that only the CDC is to open it, and only per the instructions that are delivered separately to the appropriate persons. This is consistent with what Andy’s Dad told him.

Andy: “Anna. I’m going to have a trusted friend at the business examine these vials. I’ll just give him the vials – not the container, nor the warning.”

The next day he does so. And that next day, she pretty much moves in.

Andy and Anna Discuss the Vials, 2036

It is several days later. They are in bed, relaxed, and freshly showered.

Andy: “I got the analysis results today. The first vial looks like it is an immunization targeting an extensive family of viruses resembling Ebola – but having surface features making it difficult to produce an effective immunization.

The second is a subtle modification of the immunization, one that is virtually identical to the true immunization – but completely unable to suppress any variant of the virus. The third is a strain of the virus that has been rendered harmless. This would be useful in testing the immunizations contained in the first and second vials.”

Anna: "What is the intended purpose of this terrible thing? Is it something useful in warfare between nations, or something a terrorist group would use or threaten to use against an enemy, or is it for some other purpose?"

Andy: "Since the beginning of civilization, the aristocrats, those who have ruled over the others, have needed many people to grow their food, build their mansions, fabricate their carriages and clothes, and all else. What happens when technology: computers, automated factories and farms, automated armies, and so on become able to do all the necessary work? What are the ‘commoners,’ the serfs, then needed for?"

Anna: "Oh my God! To get rid of most of the population? Is that what this is for??"

Andy: "Anna, I talked to my Dad when I was still in the hospital. He told me this was stolen from the US Army Biological Warfare Research Center. This stuff was created under the direction of the US Government – for the potential benefit of those who control that government – the class of people you and I are part of!"

Anna holds her hand up to her mouth in disbelief. Andy looks at her and tightens his face.

Andy: "It is extremely important that the government knows this material is in safe hands. I have to tell my father, and I have to do so right now."

A Meeting in Langley, Virginia, 2036

DCI: He looks at Anna, then Andy. “Love knows no bounds, does it not? If I didn’t know the two of you, or had suspicions about Andy’s lab assistant, I’d have to have all three of you silenced forever.” He paces around his office for a minute, grim faced, once glaring at the elders Aldren and Summerset. He looks at Andy. “Your business has been under continuous surveillance and significant protection since you were identified as being involved in the hijack event – even though you were obviously not a perpetrator. You and Anna are as clean as whistles – other than for this foolish and trouble causing deception. The two of you are, now, for national security reasons, under the same protections and restrictions as are your fathers. You will know things very, very few people know. Your fathers, and one of my special assistants, will fill you in, shortly, in a conference room down the hall. [He then faces Anna.] There will be no more substitute teaching nor doctoring in a public hospital. And [turning to Andy] no more opportunistic affairs with women of questionable class loyalty. I hope the two of you can adjust to your new life style. Remember – your Dads and Mothers have. Andy, the safe in your business will be retrieved by us in your presence. Your lab partner will be warned and then watched as long as we feel necessary.”

The Aldrens and the Summersets are led to a comfortable conference room some hundreds of feet from the Director’s office. There is a table, a huge projection screen on one wall, and a number of padded chairs. Dinner will be served there in a few hours, courtesy of the CIA. One of the

Director's Special Assistants (DSAs) greets them and invites them to seat themselves.

DSA: "I'm one of several liaisons between the CIA and an organization called the Automation Research Institute. Mr. Aldren and Dr. Summerset know about this ARI – as it is called for short – and in fact helped found it and provided some initial working capital to get it established in 2026. The image on the projection screen is an aerial view of how it looks today – a quite complex campus of laboratories, offices, meeting rooms, and more. I'm here to explain how it functions today. The Dads in this room can explain why it was established. I can give a 'canned' speech about it or you can just jump in with questions. I'm comfortable either way."

Andy: "Dad, why don't you or Dr. Summerset tell Anna and me what this is all about?"

Andy's Dad: "Back in the late 2010's and early 2020's, those of us who try to look ahead of world events witnessed disturbing trends. The first was 'corporate globalization.' When the CIA dismembered the nemesis of our class, the Soviet Union, in about 1990, US and other corporations became free to exploit the world. As one consequence, we were able to seriously undermine the US working class. By the turn of the century, we had done so. But technical progress with computers, manufacturing, and then artificial intelligence (AI), got to the point where something more fundamental was happening. We started to need fewer and fewer working people to manufacture and grow the stuff we needed. In 2017 a company that called itself Amazon began putting established, important, and well run businesses on the defensive and many out of business. This was a 'clarion call' for people like us to pay attention. A meeting of top

investors was held in the Krump Hotel here in Washington, DC to determine what we should do. That inspired establishment of ARI. The initial real purpose of ARI was to map out how we should influence government and invest to make this automation work in our interest.”

Anna’s Dad: “ARI quickly became a powerhouse for advancing automation of all sorts. It brought the right people together. It accelerated the development of automation. It gave coherence to our lobbying of government to subsidize a ‘regeneration of America.’ Most important, its activity made absolutely clear to us that the existing economic and governance system on the planet was becoming obsolete and unworkable. It became obvious that virtually every required societal function – from manufacturing to fielding troops to providing education – was subject to automation – and human labor, in a matter of decades, would largely be displaced. Most people would become useless.”

Andy’s Dad: “Here’s the crucial point. It made us understand we had a terrible choice to make – we could share the output of this quickly forthcoming automation with the ‘masses,’ or we could restrict the ownership and control of it to benefit ourselves.”

Anna’s Dad: “You might think that’s an easy choice – that we should share this beneficence with the world’s populations. But look at the implications! The masses of people would no longer have to work. They would no longer have to work for us! They would become ‘entitled,’ that terrible notion, to the ‘free’ output of that automation. They would not have to obey us, to defer to us, nor to accept our political dominance. The wall of social distance between them and us would disappear. They would no longer depend

upon institutions which we own and control. They wouldn't depend upon us. And they would have time to socialize and organize for political purposes. We would no longer be superior to them."

Andy's Dad: "Consequently, we would no longer be able to manage society. They would begin to do so – with every whim and fancy and every misconception about how people and nations relate. Those notions would become encoded into law and into the conduct of foreign relations. Prejudices and antagonisms would become the basis of public policy. Manipulation of mass thinking by demagogues, and adoption of ridiculous ideology by the masses, would become the basis for governance."

Anna's Dad: "In short. We dare not go that way. Automation must not be used to empower the general public."

Andy's Dad: "Think what this implies: most people are not needed, they have little or no means of income, they can only subsist by stealing, by growing food on unwanted land, by providing some good or service not provided by automation, or by charity or prostitution. Terrible poverty must become their lot."

Anna's Dad: "And that is what is beginning to happen. Give this a few years more – we are going to have real trouble. There will be revolt against us."

Anna: "What is our future?"

DSA: "Let me try to answer that. ARI was initially instituted to manage automation. When the issue your Dads just discussed became evident, a serious and systematic study of the future of mankind was pursued. An analysis of the possibilities was done. A New World Order (NWO) was proposed, presuming a very high degree of automation, and a 'pruning' of the population down to those most desirable,

most rational, and most inclined to live reasonably with other people. A model world was envisioned – a number of possibilities were considered. ARI created simulations involving geographical, social, political, and other factors. The best arrangement was found to be a network of semi-independent ‘city states.’ A world population of some 70 million people was considered ideal – at least initially. Truly democratically governed city states with an average population of one million were determined to be optimal – almost all human needs could be provided for within cities of that size. The city states could jointly create, own, control, and collectively operate specialized facilities such as mining sites and space ports – for their common use. Local military defense organizations would be small enough to not become threats to others. There would be a required exchange of ethnic and cultural groups to ensure global peace and eventual, over many, many human generations, ethnic integration.”

Andy’s Dad: “That is our intent. And now you youngsters know what we are trying to achieve.”

POSITIONING FOR THE NWO

Homeless Camp, 2037

In Chicago, Jeff and Norm finish their several mile walk to an abandoned manufacturing building near Western Avenue and Fullerton. They enter a side door into a large open area where a good number of indigent people, couples, and families have settled in and established themselves. They walk up to a curtained area where Lisa, Norm's sister, is sitting on a cot and reading. Her hair is curled up inside a baseball cap, and her loose fitting man's shirt and oversized blue jeans hide her figure. Large, horn-rimmed glasses hide most of her face. Upon seeing her for the first time, it's hard to tell whether she is male or female.

Norm: "Lisa, this is Jeff. I met him in Grant Park and thought it best he stay with us tonight. He's one of those who lost his wife to one of those 'I'll pay you to have my baby.' schemes."

Lisa: "Hi Jeff. You aren't the only one. Rarely do the Transition Centers find work for those who enter. They function primarily as a funneling mechanism to collect beautiful women of desperate couples, then deliver them to well connected males of wealth. The Center manager usually gets a reward for each successful transfer."

Jeff: "I'm pleased to meet you Lisa. You seem to know quite a bit about these Transition Centers. How did you find out?"

Lisa: "There are about a hundred homeless in this building. Two before you had this happen to them. Their wives were quite attractive. And the special payments to them ended after about a year. Keep in mind the people here are not like the homeless of some twenty years ago. These are not the mentally ill and illegal drug users that composed a good fraction of the homeless back then. These people are highly

educated and include engineers, computer programmers, skilled industrial workers, teachers, attractive secretaries who would not put up with sexual harassment at work, and even medical professionals who are not needed because huge numbers of people in the general population cannot afford medical visits. We learn their stories. Also, we exchange information with other ‘camps’ like this.”

Jeff: “I’m still getting the monthly stipend the contract specified. It’s been only a month since my wife left. No one has told me when it will stop. I’m renting a house a few miles northwest of here. It has more room than I need, electricity, water, and more privacy. Would the two of you like to join me – at least for as long as the stipend continues? I can afford to give you enough coinage to commute to your friends in this area once or twice a day.” Lisa looks at Norm.

Norm: “We’ll take you up on that – at least as long as you care to put up with us.”

Lisa: “Let’s pack up our stuff tomorrow morning and head out.”

Jeff’s Place, 2037

The three go to his bungalow on the Northwest side of Chicago, near the Logan Square subway station. The location makes for easy transit from the Northwest side to and from downtown, and to and from the old camp.

Norm: “It seems like upper class luxury to me! Does the water run? I see a night lite on. You really do have electricity. Wow!”

Jeff: “Yes. There’s even a grocery store nearby. And there’s no trouble getting rid of garbage.”

They make a meal together. They sit and talk.

Jeff: “Lisa, what’s your story? I know just a little about your brother – he too was an engineer.”

Lisa: “I was a school teacher – in the Chicago Public Schools – which had been ‘privatized.’ When deep poverty hit this Hispanic area, I was terminated.”

Jeff: “Why is there no protest to all this obvious suffering? Why no activism against this injustice?”

Lisa: “Everyone is intimidated. Surveillance devices are everywhere. In most places we cannot speak without being recorded, nor move without being tracked, nor associate with others – without that information being recorded, stored for later retrieval, and examined by human watchdogs as artificial intelligence processing decides. Also, human spies are implanted among us. Moreover, provocateurs are among us who pretend to be against the existing order in order to attract and expose those who would resist it. It’s nearly an absolute totalitarian state. I see no way to resist it.”

Norm: “I agree. We simply have to accept this state of affairs and make the best of it.”

Jeff lowers his head in obvious disappointment. Norm and Lisa set themselves up in the two spare bedrooms in the bungalow. Several days later Norm gets up early and uses the subway to head downtown. Lisa opens Jeff’s bedroom door by just a crack and asks if she can come in.

Jeff: “You can if you want, but I’m still in bed with just my shorts.”

She enters, approaches the bed, and undresses with him watching in the dim light as he sits up against the bed rest. She pulls back his bed sheet, climbs in next to him, then looks him straight in the face.

Jeff: “Lisa, I’m not the world’s greatest lover.”

Lisa: “I know I’m not as pretty as was your wife.”

She pulls out a little slip of paper she had tucked into her hair clip and gives it to him. It reads: ‘Are we being monitored by any audio recording device?’

Jeff: “No. I’ve checked this place out quite thoroughly. I have enough electronics, which I put together recently, to check the walls, ceilings, and so on. It’s clean.”

They talk.

Lisa: “Have you tried to find out who the man was who seduced your wife?”

Jeff: “I consulted with an attorney to check the legitimacy of the contract and divorce claim – and to understand what I might do to get my wife back. I was told the contract and divorce were legitimate under current law and usually adjudicated without question. The attorney also told me to keep my nose clean. I would find out nothing – but would be put on a list I don’t want to be on.”

Lisa: “That’s true. I know of a similar instance to yours. The young man just disappeared – his belongings strangely abandoned. The system deals quickly and harshly with those who threaten the elite.”

Jeff: “Well, I dropped the search. I figured she no longer wanted me anyway.”

Lisa: “Good. That means no NSA analyst is regularly scrutinizing your surveillance data, and the normal AI processing is only looking for threatening behavior of the rather ordinary kind.”

Jeff: “What can we do? Are some people trying to do something to change all this? And if so, can they be trusted?”

Lisa: “No. Electronic surveillance, human spies, and provocateurs do their work very effectively. Everybody just accepts their fate. Norm and I are hoping you have some ideas.”

Jeff: “I do. But before I talk to you and Norm about that, I want to do some checking.”

Lisa: “I understand.”

Jeff: “Lisa. You are as pretty as Sky. Is your undressing a signal to me?”

Lisa: “Yes Jeff. I don’t know how capable a lover you are, but you are handsome, and I want you to make love to me.” He lifts his bottom up, and she pulls down his shorts.

Jeff’s Plan, 2037

Over the next several days, Jeff visits the several parking lots of the large electronics business in a northwest suburb of Chicago where Norm claims to have worked. On the third day he sees a friend and past workmate heading to his parked car. He intercepts him and they talk. That friend happens to know the Human Relations Director there. The next day Jeff is informed that Norm worked there as he had claimed about himself at Grant Park. This is not proof Norm and Lisa are not agents of the ruling regime, but probably the best assurance Jeff is likely to obtain. He decides to trust them. It is the day after he has so decided, and the three of them have just finished supper at his bungalow.

Jeff: “Norm, Lisa – I have some ideas to bounce off of you. Is this a good time to discuss?”

Both agree it is.

Jeff: “I have some ideas pertaining to what we can do. I’ll start with some goals we should want to achieve, then list some things we ought to be doing to achieve them.

The most urgent goal should be to share the output of goods and services that automation currently produces and can produce. The second goal should be to establish governance by the people – the way America’s founding fathers insisted – through genuinely representative government.”

Lisa: “How might we achieve these goals?”

Jeff: “My musings suggest the following strategic steps: First, we work to dismantle the surveillance system and harsh policing. We really can not do anything until we, at least partially, do that. Second, we build a way, or many ways, of communicating among ourselves. It doesn’t have to be fast or convenient, but it must allow groups of us to inform all the others of us. Third, we do things to help us survive – like growing and distributing food, finding shelter, and providing some medicine. Fourth, we start to organize ourselves into some kind of entity that allows us to act and respond in a collective fashion to the troubles we have. Fifth, we find out what the elite really intend to do with us in the near and distant future.”

Norm: “Wow! That’s quite a plan. How could we accomplish it?”

Jeff: “I think there are activities we can engage in to help us along. Let me list some I’ve thought of:

- Retrieve surveillance devices. Remove them from service. Analyze their technology. Use parts of them to fabricate devices and systems we can use for our purposes.

- Find old PCs, printers, memory sticks, engineering prototypes, and other old parts that do not have surveillance devices built-in. Use these to do our mundane computer work and for communications.
- Design and build simple information transfer devices so that two people can transfer data files simply by walking past one another in a store or bus or subway.
- Widely circulate information useful for resistance: how to build useful devices, how to organize into cells, how to communicate without revealing message originators nor recipients. Create a ‘floating library’ of such useful information whose sources are hidden and undetectable. Distribute it in so many ways and so widely that everyone can easily access it, and so that the authorities cannot inhibit its dissemination.
- Organize into ‘semi-independent’ groups or cells of people who can operate independently of one another. Operate them so that if a cell is captured by the police, very little information identifying other cells is obtained.
- Use drones and drone implanted devices to spy on the police and the elite.
- Set traps for the police expecting to be able to arrest or rape. Get weaponry and ammunition to add to what some of us already have.
- Penetrate the elite. It is likely not all of them sympathize with this brutalization of the public. And find out what is going on with the clearing and new construction a few miles southwest of here.
- Watch for layoffs. People with good skills in technology, policing, and in the military, are becoming like us. Some

will be plants but not most. Let's learn to distinguish the spies and provocateurs from our fellow victims.

You get the idea. We can build on this!"

Lisa: "Yes! Let's be careful, but let's do it!"

North Shore, 2038

This is the principal area in the Chicago metropolis where the wealthy and uppity have lived for over a hundred years. It is composed of many small towns. It is just north of Chicago and adjacent to Lake Michigan. The people who live here are mostly WASPs (White, Anglo-Saxon, Protestant). They own the small businesses in Chicago. They are the lawyers, advertising executives, doctors, accountants, and upper level managers of the big corporations in the area. The vast majority of them have their noses high in the air and judge the 99% residing in Chicago proper to be inferior, merely dirt under their feet, and intended by God to be their worker-servants and gullible customers.

But now, in the late 2030's, there are problems. First, and most important to them, their customer base is catastrophically declining. The lower class customers are earning less and less money – and their debt is so large they cannot find finance companies willing to loan them more money with which to purchase things. Many in Wilmette, Winnetka, Evanston, and Park Ridge – are finding it hard to sustain their businesses or keep their plushy management related jobs. Second, that rabble is now venturing into their classy suburbs – to steal, to beg, to find places to sleep, to sell themselves, and just to hang around. The local police

are rough with them, but even that is not sufficient to keep them out or at least under control. Something must be done.

The Mayor of Park Ridge speaks to the Police Chief:

Mayor: “What the hell should we do that we are not already doing?”

Police Chief: “I have headaches thinking about this. I wake up at 3am in a cold sweat. Logic tells me to keep these people out by building a wall, by making this area a walled city – or whatever you want to call it.”

Mayor: “How can you do that? We’ve a long sprawling border with the Chicago city limits, and there is no land upon which to build a wall.”

Police Chief: “I know. And Mayor, I’m bringing in more recruits that are vicious and uncontrollable. These people are ex-military and mercenary. Many are trained to rape and even torture. I hate having them on the force.”

Mayor: “We’ve got to get rid of this unemployed population in Chicago. That’s the real solution – isn’t it?”

Police Chief: “I’m afraid so. Some people I know that visit Washington tell me they hear rumors indicating that is being considered, even planned for.”

Mayor: “I’ve heard them also.”

Police Chief: “Mayor, I’ll do more to spread the word that people coming here to break the law will be dealt with even more harshly. I can get a rumor going of a nasty incident that will really keep these people away. And maybe it won’t be a rumor. Will you watch my back?”

Mayor: “Yes.”

There is irony here. Few of the people in these suburbs will make it to the ‘to be saved’ lists for immunization a decade and a half from now.

State of the People, 2040

A huge poster has been pasted on the outside wall of the Chicago City State. Normally, only the dispossessed can see and read it. It reads:

“Why did you let this happen?”

A few own, and thus control, everything of significance – including even the governance of all of society. Why did you not prevent this?

Now, you cannot protest. If you are male, the police will identify and beat you, and they will rape your wife or girl companion if they are pretty, or will beat them if they are not.

The politicians, even those that pretend to serve you, when elected, serve only those who come to them on a daily basis with specific selfish requests. When confronted (rarely) by those like you – they merely plead impossibility of ‘doing the right thing.’

What do you need to do? It is what you should have done – a very long time ago. You should have organized yourselves for real democracy – neighborhood by neighborhood – and taken power – as was your right and your responsibility. Now, it is too late. Those who have total contempt for you will soon laugh as you are exterminated.

You are totally disorganized – you have no collective power – meaning no power whatsoever. You have been brainwashed to think collective action, on your part, is

subversive – even though the rich and privileged are organized in multiple ways and to the extreme.

This wall is not just a wall. It is the separation of the past from the future, of the inferior from the superior, of the weak and foolish from the capable and wise. It is like the separation between the Neanderthal and Cro-Magnon.

As you stand and read this, know your place – among your kind, only the young and pretty females are of interest to those on the other side.

Fool that you are, why do you even read this? Why not just find a sharpened piece of metal – then throw yourself upon it?”

Occasionally, someone stops and reads this. They think yes, it is true, but also think there is nothing they can do. They just pass on. They have not even the gumption to find a piece of sharp metal. A pain, worse than that, they already feel in their decrepit bodies and tortured brains. They are the walking dead.

Who Gets the Automation? 2040

At CIA headquarters, the Director of Central Intelligence (DCI), the Chair of the Joint Chiefs of Staff (Chair JCoS) of the US military, several billionaire investors, and several other high government officials meet to make policy.

DCI: “Through automation, we’ve put many tens of millions out of work. We’ve harassed the hell out of them with brutal policing, and we’ve cracked down on gun ownership. Many have left the country, as we intended, but many unemployed remain. In fact, there seems to be

increasing resistance to being shipped out. Automation is proceeding at the speed and extent we thought."

The Director of Central Intelligence continues.

DCI: "Our basic policy of disenfranchising the masses continues unabated. We continue to control all branches of government, the mass media, the economic life of the country, and we conduct foreign policy as we see fit. The policy of not sharing the benefits of corporate globalization nor automation with the 99%, as they call themselves, continues. Do any of you feel we need to reconsider this position?"

Investor 4: "Yes, I do. I think we ought to consider sharing the benefits of automation with the existing human population."

Investor 2: "Donald, you know as well as any of us the danger of giving the masses an assured material abundance. Do you doubt that would elevate their social status and then permit them to dominate politically? Or perhaps you consider that somehow acceptable?"

Investor 4: "No. I simply wish we could find some way to share this automation – and work out some way to ensure workable governance given the new circumstances."

Investor 2: "Unless you or someone else here has a well thought out alternative, I say we continue our current policy of denying the 99% the fruits of the automation we've built."

Given their facial expressions, it's obvious all but Investor 4 and Investor 9 agree with Investor 2. Investor 9 pipes up.

Investor 9: "We don't know for sure that the 99% can't act responsibly. Keep in mind, we're the ones who have

deliberately manipulated them into their current state of confusion and incompetence."

Investor 2: "So what do you propose?"

Investor 9: "Why don't we do a test. Why not pick out a few smallish areas within the 99%, let them organize as a true democracy, isolate them from the remainder of the 99%, give each of them a basic income, let them trade with nearby city states – and see how they govern?"

Investor 3: "I think any such small test would be too limited and too artificial to prove anything. And there would be practical difficulties – such as how to control interaction with relatives outside the isolated areas. And there would be quick and uncontrollable reactions from those of the 99% outside these experimental sites – people who would insist on inclusion into such arrangements. And I believe you will argue a considerable amount of time and learning would have to be tolerated for these people to learn how to govern effectively."

Investor 6: Whispers to Investor 5: "These two just don't get it – we want the prettier of the lower class women to ourselves. We don't want lower class males around – and we don't need the lower class plain Janes cluttering up our world either."

DCI: "We need to get past this. Let's vote."

All meeting members, except Investors 4 and 9, vote to simply continue the current policy of denying benefits to the 99%."

Organized Resistance, 2040

Electronic parts, including low power laser modules, batteries, and sensors have become widely available as have instruction manuals on how to build communications devices, drones, surveillance devices, and network jammers. Many cells are now using drones and electronics to quickly deliver small packages, to disrupt surveillance networks, and to spy on the police. Ruling class control of some urban areas has become tenuous and sometimes absent. Mobile and ‘on the move’ enclaves of persons resisting authority, call them cells of rebels (or just cells), exist. No one knows how many. They cause food to be grown in the city, and they smuggle food in from the countryside. Defecting US Army troops, disguised as downtrodden poor, are sometimes able to prevent police intrusion into areas heavy with such cells. Information useful to legitimate cells, but not to the local and homeland police, travels quickly, far, and wide through the use of laser devices and robot couriers. The general population is hearing rumors that the ruling class is planning to inflict on them a Nazi-like “Final Solution.” Many fear it is true. The failure of government to provide a ‘safety net’ or ‘income minimum’ for ordinary people – in a time and place where machine automation is replacing human labor – seems to validate the rumors. The resistance is growing and seems likely to explode in numbers and influence.

Resistance Cell 007, 2040

Paul is the originator of what he humorously thinks of as ‘Cell 007.’ He doesn’t publicly call it that. Rather he calls it ‘Cell Dan Ryan,’ or ‘Dan Ryan’ for short. It is a resistance

cell just off the Dan Ryan expressway, a highway which runs straight up and down the South side of Chicago. The cell is a monitoring cell, sponsored by the Chicago Police and Homeland Security. It was created to join, and thus surreptitiously understand, the secretive resistance movement in the Chicago area. It was formed by Paul when he saw a transient person, who was bicycling, throw, every block or so, a propaganda leaflet onto the sidewalks. He read it and showed it to his DHS supervisor. Days later the supervisor instructed him to do what the leaflet said – and to do so using the information in the pamphlet to build a cell – just like anyone else might – using his own wits to do so successfully. But the purpose of this DHS and FBI instigated cell is not to expose other cells to arrest. Rather it is to learn, by everyday operation, the difficulties and advantages of the network of such cells.

Paul is a graduate, in math, of the University of Chicago. [We met him several times earlier in this book.] He begins by visiting his past classmates congregating at the university for a class reunion. There he meets a past roommate, Kyle, who also studied math but then became an engineer and recently fell into the ranks of the unemployed. Kyle knows a number of other highly educated people who are now unemployed and outraged at what the ruling class has engineered for them. Paul convinces Kyle and his associates to form a resistance cell as described in the pamphlet. They are at their first, formal meeting.

Paul: “Friends. Let’s discuss our situation. Just what can we do and what can’t we? What dangers do we have? How do we avoid or mitigate them? What ‘outsiders’ do we deal

with and how? And how should we create new cells like ourselves?”

Kyle: “The goals in the pamphlet Paul discovered seem like a good initial list, namely: sharing the output of automation and democratic governance. Sensible steps to achieve those are: get rid of surveillance of us, build a robust and secure communications system, protect ourselves from the police, and help those like ourselves survive. Regarding dangers, we seem to have to trust one another – at least until we have good reason or evidence not to. I’m convinced there is greater risk in doing nothing, in not organizing.”

Victor: “We can considerably reduce our risk of apprehension by setting up appropriate kinds of communication – both between our cell and other cells, and person to person among ourselves. I know many strategies. One of which is to use many links in our communication paths, changing links rapidly, and destroying links that have been used before. This can be done since links can be composed of: cheap, short distance laser devices; the hundreds of thousands of obsolete telephone subscriber loops laying unused underground; simple radio links using small parabolic dishes; and so on.”

Kyle: “How can we get these devices?”

Victor: “I’ve designed and built dozens. Keep in mind I’ve had little else to do. I’ve also written-up how to do this, and distributed this know-how to many public places on pamphlets and old memory sticks.”

Kevin: “This raises another issue. How can we trade or buy useful stuff from other cells?”

Allen: “At first thought that seems difficult. But it can be done. Transactions can be negotiated between two cells – supposing they know of one another. Delivery can be done,

sometimes, by drones. The meeting site can be communicated just prior to delivery. Drones, with attached video cameras meet, say on the roof of a building. The seller puts down the goods. The buyer lays down the cash. The drones pick these up and fly to their owner's delivery locations which are not the same as the drone launch locations. Of course the opposite parties of the transaction do not know where those delivery locations are. If the transaction is of many units, partial deliveries and payments can be made with each party verifying the prior deliveries and payments before engaging in the next. Human imagination is important in resolving these kinds of problems. It seems we can almost always find a way to do what we need to."

Thus Dan Ryan starts to operate. They learn to disable and capture surveillance devices. They surveil the area of the city they occupy and surreptitiously patrol it. If a raid occurs, they will have warning. They turn to pursuing the higher goals of the organization they are now part of – spawning new cells, helping those in need, foiling raids on the cells, gaining access to the output of automated factories, and planning for governance by the people. Because Paul initiated this cell, DHS is in the know but does not – for now – interfere. Rather, DHS quickly realizes the network of cells, driven by determined and competent technical people, will become a formidable threat.

The Cleansing General Plan, 2042

At CIA headquarters, the Director of Central Intelligence, the Chair of the Joint Chiefs of Staff of the US military,

several billionaire investors, and several other high government officials again meet to make policy.

DCI: "Given the choice we've made, to continue to deny the benefits of automation to the 99%, we need to accept the consequences of that choice. We can see, down the road ten or so years from now, that our current population of some 200 million will have to be reduced still much further – to perhaps a few tens of millions. Do you all agree?"

Given their facial expressions, it's obvious all but Investors 4 and 9 agree.

Investor 4: "No. Once any plan produced here is put into motion, it will gain momentum. It will be really hard to stop. Do we really want to murder, that's what it is, eight or nine billion human beings? Is there no other way to go into the future?"

A formal vote is taken. Investors 4 and 9 are overwhelmingly overruled.

DCI: "Then that's settled. Let's move on. We need a plan to be rid of all except ourselves and those both useful to us and not hostile to us."

Investor 5: "What are our options to do this 'cleansing?'"

DCI: "We've looked into a large number of methods. One category involves arrest, transport to detention centers, then termination. Another category proposes direct assault and annihilation, using our recently fielded robotic troops and assault drones. These approaches suffer from the problem that the reduction must be performed quickly, and the perpetrator must remain unknown – lest a dangerous reaction be provoked before the outcome is inevitable. That quickness implies, given we are pursuing an eight or nine billion person termination, the secret fabrication,

deployment, and use of a horrendous number of killing stations or units – which is simply not feasible. Such a massive activity could not be kept secret from the general public. Yet another approach provokes and facilitates extreme ethnic strife, but that is not easily controlled. Still another would involve poisoning the lower class by water or food stuff contamination, a massive and dangerous project. The bottom line, only a biologic solution is suitable. That is because communicable disease intrinsically creates its own continuation by geometric progression. In other words, one infection causes say five infections, which cause 25 more, which cause 125 more, then 625, and so on. If infection multiplies five fold every two weeks, you can get to nine billion in about 14 periods or 28 weeks! With the human population separated into regions and cities as it is, and with population isolation policies put into place, it will of course take longer – perhaps several years. But, from a conceptual point of view – it's doable.”

Chair JCoS: “We’ve been working on just that kind of weapon – a virus and immunization to be used in just the way the DCI is indicating.”

Investor 2: “How dangerous is this to us, and how far along are you in developing a very, very reliable immunization? And how would administration of the immunization work?”

Chair JCoS: “The immunization we’ve developed is very reliable. Who we administer it to is what we need to determine. And how dangerous is it to us? That is subject to debate. It was designed to not mutate easily. But to prove it can’t or won’t under any circumstance – I don’t know how that can be done.”

The JCoS Chair continues:

Chair JCoS: “You should know that those who will not be on our favored list, but who are sufficiently influential to demand immunization, can be given a 'placebo' vaccination. Placebos are available – with very little detectable difference between them and the genuine vaccine.”

The General continues with still another aspect.

Chair JCoS: “There is something else here. Some other government, or conceivably even a single pharmaceutical company, could develop such a thing. We’ve got an existential issue here.”

DCI: “That implies we need to get all labs capable of this kind of effort under responsible control – everywhere on the planet. We’re the top dogs – for now – so it’s another issue we have to deal with.”

DCI: The DCI continues. “We’ve now settled the cleansing issue. Let’s consider the aftermath. What kind of society will we put into place? It seems to me our past form of society – our capitalism, if you will – has run its course. I can’t map it into the future that seems before us. What kind of change do you investors imagine?”

Investor 5: “I fully agree with you. We enjoyed our capitalism to the hilt. It was a great game, cheating the masses, the suckers, selling them crap, taking their money, abusing them at work, fucking the prettier of their women, seeing them grovel begging for jobs, looking down our noses at them, seeing them ask, in Churches, forgiveness from an imagined benevolent God, and seeing them watch, with excitement, dumb TV skits and other nonsense. And the lies and propaganda they believed – about foreign villains and dictators – when we, in fact, were the worst evil of all. They actually believed we competed against one

another – to provide them the best that a ‘free market’ could provide! Hell, we cooperated and colluded more than we ever competed. The success of the US economy was mostly due to our favorable geographical location during WW2 and our harnessing the 99% to be our work slaves. And harness them we did. We made them struggle for survival, made them compete against one another, made them feel inferior, made them insecure, made them accept their lot in life. We setup millionaires’ clubs where stupid but physically attractive women were available to us in a vain hope of marriage or money. We forced their women into the workplace to exploit their compliant labor, but also to get them used to being subservient to us and available to us. My favorite thing we did to them was how – after we did all this and put them into poverty – we then used the mass media to portray ourselves as heroes, as the masterly type they should all admire, respect, and, in the case of the good looking women, submit to us and consider having sex with us as being acceptable, expected, and in fact normal behavior! Well, that nice game is over. The dumb and gullible employees and consumers are quickly disappearing from the economy and society. As the DCI just said, the old game makes no sense anymore."

DCI: "So what should we change?"

Investor 5: "First, in the New World Order (NWO) about to be, there will be ample resources and a super high degree of automation. We’ve no need of rivalry. We have everything to gain by uniting into one, largely planned and intelligently coordinated world-wide society – genuinely governed by a surviving population that is well educated, reasonable,

rational, and free of the stupidity that made demagoguery and our own criminal form of capitalism possible.”

Chair JCoS: “I agree. I think governance by the great body of people makes sense among a population that is rational and reasonable – the population that will survive the cleansing. It seems to me there ought to be a way, even now, of experimenting with a small population, letting some of the chosen learn how to govern effectively, then gradually expanding that both in scope of issues dealt with, and in the number of persons participating. Eventually, it could include all surviving adults – the world over – and pretty much cover all issues. Of course such a system would provide policy directives to government officials, leaving the implementation details to them, but would also carefully monitor what the officials actually do.”

Investor 5: “Second, I’d start talking to the top dogs in China, India, and Russia about getting rid of the rabble over there that are becoming unnecessary to them also.”

The group as a whole generally agrees with the above. The very general understanding achieved at this meeting will set in motion further contemplation and some planning inside government and the military. Furthermore, each member agrees to contemplate how their own organization would have a role to assume. It is understood that the action discussed here is, at this time, still tentative – pending future events and further discussion.

Weapons Owners, Final Warning, 2042

Possession and ownership, by the general public, of firearms, ammunition, and accessories, of the kind designed

and manufactured for military purposes, has been prohibited by law for over a decade. Still, among the US population, there are millions of persons who possess them. But the National Rifle Association is no longer politically relevant.

It is time to give a final warning for violators to submit those illegally possessed items to the police. The Department of Homeland Security issues a TV ad, which is aired countrywide, warning gun owners to act according to the law. Gun owners are warned that non-compliance will no longer be tolerated. Gun owners should expect that force will soon be used to confiscate and destroy the illegal items.

A Raid, 2043

Farmland near the corporate electronics behemoth in Schaumburg, Illinois has been subdivided into small farmsteads (we'll call them farmlets). These were then purchased by managers and engineers employed by that behemoth. One feverishly cultivated plot is producing a prodigious amount of apples, peaches, vegetables and even fresh eggs – enough to warrant a weekly trip, using a van, into the Northwest side of Chicago. This transfer of goods is not unusual. However, a neighboring farmlet is owned and often visited by an owner and manager who knows that his enterprising neighbor was recently laid off. That enterprising neighbor once revealed, while still working, that he 'had no use for the current, unjust system of business and government.' Thus the nosy neighbor is suspicious. He contacts the Schaumburg police and asks them to find out where these food deliveries are going. They do so. Lo and behold, they are not going to any legitimate, registered grocery or restaurant – but to an ostensibly vacant factory

on the Chicago Northwest side. The DHS investigates. In that factory building is a resistance cell – although having very little contact with other cells. It is composed, mostly, of young and middle-aged females: nurses, computer programmers, and engineers who have become unemployed. They are mostly engaged in helping one another and those of need in the neighboring area.

The DHS knows these people are harmless. But their discovery is an opportunity to make ‘an example’ of what will not be tolerated. The DHS and the Schaumburg police act.

Captain Rick Stuben is a West Point graduate. He was a US army captain and had combat experience in the Iran expeditionary force of the early 2030’s. He is now a captain in the Schaumburg Police Department (SPD). Plans for the action are prepared, and Rick is given operational command. He hates what he has witnessed in the last decade, and has no desire to execute this operation. However, he does not complain. He knows that if he doesn’t take charge, some aggressive, ambitious fool will. He has the internal discipline and self-control to take command and do what has to be done.

The raid is carried out.

Commander Stuben watches from the command van at the periphery of the targeted area. Cameras carried by key squad personnel show the action. He occasionally issues a corrective order to a squad, and he responds to inquiries from his superiors. It goes according to plan. In less than an hour, it’s over.

One male member of the resistance cell was killed. The other two males were apprehended, beaten, and will be condemned to a labor gulag specializing in ‘dangerous work’ for industry and the military. The women, all quite attractive, were roughly handled, identified, and whisked off to an industrial work camp in the area. Several were raped during the raid. Most will be made available for sex service to ranking police and VIPs. In between such service, they will perform routine and mundane manual labor that has not yet been automated.

Resistance documents are collected, including all contacts with other parties. Operational data recently used by the cell is organized and sent to the DHS and the NSA. The area is cleared. Commander Rick Stuben, and his guard who is well armed and who is also a close friend and confidant, examine the target area and building – just as would a major-general after a significant military battle. They pass disrupted work areas where food and medicine were packed for delivery, where coffee and snacks were available, and where cots were used for naps. They go past signs of scuffle, ripped off women’s clothing, and the spot where arterial blood had pooled.

On the second floor they encounter a young woman, in shock, staring at the room of jumbled tables, chairs, scattered articles of work, coffee cups, and so on. Near her is a small utility closet, its door now opened, where she apparently hid, and which, apparently, was not examined by the fast moving squad. They approach her. She is beautiful. Rick’s guard, whose name is Conrad, fetches several chairs. He and Rick gently sit her down, then sit down facing her. Rick: “What work did you do here?”

She stares at them a long time. She speaks:

Woman: “I checked that medicine about to be delivered was appropriate for it’s stated use. Why did you people do this?”

Rick takes her hand and measures her pulse. It is strong and normal. He turns to Conrad. The two look at one another.

Rick: “I want you to take this woman to my residence. No one is to know about this or her existence.”

Rick writes a note to be handed to his housekeeper. He gives it to Conrad. Conrad does as asked. Commander Rick Stuben takes a standard patrol vehicle back to headquarters.

Rick and Denise, 2043

Rick’s housekeeper Sarah (who is his mother) meets Rick at the residence door.

Sarah: “Denise is in the spare bedroom. I’ve had dinner with her, and I think I’ve been able to calm her down and convince her you are no ogre.”

Rick: “Thanks Mom. She’s been through hell. But I’ve learned her sentiments. She’s on our side. And Mom, I’m smitten by her.”

They go to the spare bedroom. Sarah knocks and calls to her:

Sarah: “Rick is home and here to talk with you. May I let him in?”

Denise says yes. Sarah opens the door.

Sarah: “Denise, if you want me to be here with you two, I’m happy to do so?”

Denise: “No. I believe I can trust Rick.”

Rick enters, walks to one of two facing chairs and beckons her to sit at the other. He adjusts it for her as she sits. He

sits. He looks down at the carpet for a number of seconds. He has a sad look on his face.

Rick: “I know I cannot convince you how much I did not want this raid to happen. I had no choice. Had I not led it, the violence would have been much worse.”

Denise: “Why did you bring me here? To be your concubine?”

Rick: “No. I have no need of concubines. I admit I’m struck by your beauty, and I’m more than half in love with you, but that’s not the reason I brought you here.”

Denise: “Why then did you?”

Rick: “I would be killed if my bosses ever found out what I’m about to tell you. I’m trusting you because I have good reason to believe you think as I do – and that you are not a FBI or DHS plant into the resistance.

I want the resistance to succeed. I despise what is being done to ordinary people, people who went to school, people who have done nothing to deserve this treatment, people who should be sharing in the benefits of automation, and who should be democratically governed.

I want you to be my contact when I return you to the resistance. I have good connections and learn a lot about planned operations in this part of the country. You were not identified in the raid. I may need you to deliver a message sometime in the future should I discover something very important to the resistance.”

Denise: “How do I know you will not use me to destroy other cells?”

Rick: “When I release you, you will be able to evade being tracked. I’ll show you how later. When and if I have a message, it will be encoded so only you can decipher it, and

it will be left at a number of places which you must periodically check.”

Denise: “So what do you want of me tonight?”

Rick: “I’ve told you how I feel about you. I’m a gentleman, or at least I try hard to be. I’ve never forced myself on any woman and don’t want to be intimate with a woman unless she really, really wants to be with me and says so to my face.”

Denise: “I see. What now?”

Rick: “My mom will help you get ready for bed. You’ve been through hell today. Maybe she could share this room with you tonight and help you if you need it. There’s a pull down bed in the wall she could use.

I get up pretty early to get to work. I won’t see you again until supper time tomorrow.”

Denise: “Good Night.”

Rick: “Good Night.”

He leaves.

The Next Day, 2043

The terrible emotions of yesterday have considerably subsided. Rick is home from work, and his Mom, Denise, and he have had supper. Both Denise and Rick are ready for a serious discussion. They go to the guest bedroom where Denise feels most comfortable, most at home. They sit on the chairs facing one another.

Denise: “What do you think is really going on?”

Rick: “The ruling class only feels safe and secure when it is in total control, control which it has essentially achieved in the last fifty years. But now there is real automation, the substitution of machines and artificial intelligence for

human labor and management capability. That presents a terrible predicament – the control and output of that automation can be shared with the general population, or it can be solely owned by and only used for the benefit of the ruling class. Either choice has horrible consequences. If ownership and output are shared, the population becomes materially prosperous. Ordinary persons would not have to fear losing employment if they engage in political activity, and would have more time and inclination to do so. As a consequence, they would become less intimidated and controllable by the ruling class – and would become more active and forceful in governance. Ultimately, the ruling class would lose its political dominance, its ability to ensure a privileged future for itself. On the other hand, if the benefits of automation are not shared, then the deprived population, being of no use as labor and being politically impotent, must descend into terrible poverty. Resistance and rebellion become inevitable. Those of wealth and privilege are then forced, by one means or another, to eliminate that population.”

Denise: “I think most people understand what you just said – but don’t quite think and speak of it in those hard, cold terms. That is why they believe something terrible is going to happen to them, and they see these walled cities being built as refuge for the rich and connected.”

Rick: “I’m afraid they are correct.”

Denise: “How are the privileged going to be rid of us. There are rumors.”

Rick: “I’m not privy to the details. Among most of those who are still thriving – including my Mom and I – there is the presumption that some kind of disease is being

engineered, against which only the privileged will be immunized.”

Denise: “If that is so, what use is the kind of resistance we are building?”

Rick: “If the resistance becomes formidable and viable, before automation of the police and the military becomes well advanced, there will be major defections from those. Many in those forces know they will become unnecessary and in fact a danger to the ruling class. Should those defections become massive, the military command can be changed and the military can shut down such a murderous project.”

Denise: “What do you want me to do to help.”

Rick: “Although I’d much prefer you to stay with Mom and me, you can be my trusted recipient of any actionable, important information I might obtain.”

Denise: “Why don’t we talk about that tomorrow evening.” Denise turns her head to look at Rick. They both stand up facing one another. The desire is mutual and evident.

Denise: “Well, what are you waiting for?”

Rick: “I need to hear some words.”

Denise: “I’m not going to say them. But they are implied by my looking at you the way I am.”

He kisses her seriously, then passionately. He even has tears in his eyes. He hugs her tightly. Before she submits to him completely, she composes herself enough to say: “You’d better tell your Mom we need some privacy.”

He goes to the bedroom door, opens it, and shouts like a little boy: “Mom, Denise and I need to be alone for a while.” Mom yells back: “OK. I’ll let you two be.” Mom grins a happy grin. Denise just about laughs. Rick and Denise then do what they both very much want to do.

Rick's General Plan, 2043

The next evening, Rick and Denise talk some more. He shows her some tricks to evade being tracked and to fool the various kinds of surveillance devices and arrays. The talk then turns to how Denise might be used to strengthen the resistance.

Rick: "I've been thinking how you can be most useful. It's not by being a communications conduit. And I've come to realize you would be under suspicion since you weren't captured during the raid. I now realize that a few years hence, the security forces will need to deal with significant enclaves of resistance cells. What I had to direct was only a small scale of what will be common a few years hence."

Denise: "I see from the look on your face that you have some plan for dealing with that."

Rick: "Yes. The repression I foresee has a weakness. If the general public, and the majority of the security people, could only see the raids as they are actually carried out, and also see the innocent nature of the ordinary people they are directed against – there would be widespread revulsion to those raids and toward the people who instigate them. For many of the security people, both police and military, it would become an epiphany, an inducement to defect. We can't stop the raids from happening on an ever larger scale, but we can make certain that some raids, whose locations we can anticipate in advance, are publicly exposed as the brutal operations they actually are."

Denise: "How do we do that?"

Rick: "Let's see to it that enclaves of cells have the technical devices and systems to record and quickly

communicate, to other enclaves and to the mass media, what really happens during those raids. And let's develop the ability of many in the mass media who are sympathetic to the resistance to effectively broadcast that video and audio when they receive it."

Denise: "I think that is a great project. But how do we do it, and what can I do to help?"

Rick: "I know many people in the media. Some are technicians, others are personalities, stage hands, and administrators. Some are sympathetic to the resistance. I can direct you to visit some of the facilities, and I'll bet you can find out much, much more. Does this sound like something you'd like to do?"

Denise: "Yes! And you and I can be together a good deal of the time."

They kiss and hug.

Heavy Mfg & Automation, 2043

The first city states have been running for many years now. Those parts of their economies that are intrinsically local have been built, are running, and have been updated as automation technology has progressed. The distinction between what, in manufacturing, should be made locally and what should be made globally, is now very visible.

Investor 5, other investors, and government officials are now visiting the Chicago area city state for a status update. That site is located on Chicago's near Northwest side.

Proj.Eng.: "Well, we see that we can't do everything locally. Each city state, can't have its own spaceport, aluminum mining plant and smelter, ship building, integrated circuit

manufacturing, and so much more. We need entities, call them multi-local enterprises if you want, shared by the multitude of city states.”

Investor 5: “I want to hear about these ‘multi-local’ entities.”

Proj.Eng.: “Yes. Let’s let the city states, the locales, own these large enterprises collectively, and let the locales give them operating charters which carefully delineate their purpose and scope. As you know, there actually is precedent for such ‘chartered corporations’ in early American history. Let these sometimes giant but necessary enterprises be duplicated, perhaps several of each type in each of the continents – for reasons of transportation cost, for the reliability that comes from redundancy, and for the likelihood of beneficial competition and evolution that comes from comparable, but separate and transparent organizations.”

Investor 5: “I buy that. Local cooperatives, for food merchandising, often had such ‘umbrella associations,’ which they collectively controlled, to provide advertising, purchasing leverage, finance, legal service, and much else to the otherwise self-sufficient local and publicly owned businesses. Let’s check with ARI to see what planning they may have done with this notion.”

Investor 5 continues.

Investor 5: “Now, let’s hear from you about the automation you’ve been operating here in Chicago.”

Proj.Eng.: “Yes. The degree of automation has been something! From wind and photo-voltaics we gather most of our needed energy. Our automated plants, located mostly on the Northwest side, manufacture virtually all of the household goods (kitchenware, furniture, fixtures, heating

and air conditioning units, building materials, and so much more). We even assemble our household electronics and transportation vehicles – which are now constructed from standard modular components and 3D printing processes. The real measure of what we don't automate is the list of what we have to import from the outside. This is a fairly small list, but includes things like: potatoes, plastic pellets for our molding machines, microcomputer chips, vehicle tires, many industrial chemicals, and lithium battery packs.”

Investor 5: “What problems are we going to have as we build dozens more city states in North America – ones that have even greater independence and complexity than this one?”

Proj.Eng.: “Well. As the old economy, which we still depend upon, collapses – we are going to need the functioning it still provides to be transferred to the network of city states. As we build those more comprehensive city states, we need to be sure that functioning is adequately transferred from the old economy. And there is another, also very big problem. The old economy is noticeably collapsing. We are finding it more and more difficult to obtain needed material from that old economy – which is starting to crumble because the population that can afford to purchase, even the necessities, is rapidly diminishing.”

Investor 5: “I understand and quite agree. That comprehensive build-up of city states is coming fast. As you imply – it has to.”

Doctor & Patient, 2043

In Portland, Oregon a female patient is sitting in a doctor's examination room with a minor complaint. The doctor

suspects something else is on her mind. She is in her middle twenties, is very attractive, and is very well dressed for this visit. He is in his early thirties and has been practicing medicine for several years. He is an athletic, good looking, and confident young man. The supporting nurse is not in the room, and the door is closed.

Doctor: “The condition you described to my assistant is very minor and does not require treatment. I think something else is bothering you.”

Patient: “Yes, but I’m somewhat embarrassed to discuss it.”

Doctor: “I don’t see there is ever anything to be embarrassed about. Let’s hear what’s on your mind.”

Patient: “I want to have a baby, but I don’t want it to be my husband’s, I want it to be yours.”

Doctor: “Wow! That is something. I could get into a lot of trouble, but I like the idea. I find you to be very attractive. I would not be able to help you support the child. It would have to be a complete secret.”

Patient: “I’ve no problem with that. I’ll even sign an agreement you could use against me that I’ll never request any form of support.”

Doctor: “Let me look some things up.”

He looks at her medical records. He examines her estrus chart.

Doctor: “It looks like your estrus cycle peaks in two weeks. Would you like to meet me at the downtown park, near the fountain, at maybe 10am on the 17th? We can go to my place for a few hours.”

Patient: “Yes! I’ll be there. As luck would have it, my husband will be out of town, and will remain out of town for several weeks.”

Doctor: “Great, it’s a date! Your visit here today is complete. I’ll let the nurse know you need no further treatment.”

Later, at his residence, the doctor does some checking. Apparently she and her husband have never been involved in litigation. Had they, he would suspect some kind of malicious set-up to gain financial compensation. They meet on the 17th as agreed, and spend a passionate midday together. They do so again for several days afterward. Nine months later she gives birth to a baby boy which she and her husband name Johnathan. This was a fortunate encounter in another respect. Both she and her son will receive the special immunizations some ten years hence. They will be among the survivors of the cleansing.

Choosing the Chosen, 2043

The top echelon of the US ruling class has decided to proceed with planning for a seemingly necessary ‘cleansing.’ The particulars for deciding who shall survive, the process for ensuring they survive, and the means by which those not chosen will be excluded – must be thoughtfully architected. The DCI, the Chair of the JCoS, and a number of influential investors are in attendance at a conference room at CIA headquarters in Washington, DC.

DCI: “I believe all invitees are here. Let’s get started. We’ve got several major policies to determine. Let’s start with how to select the survivors?”

Investor 5: “The short and honest answer is – we select the elite which is composed of perhaps several tens of thousands or so like ourselves, and our families – and those

who are necessary or at least very desirable in the NWO. The NWO will be a network of city states, so those necessary will have a useful role in its functioning. But let's not exclude the many others likely to benefit future humanity."

Investor 2: "This seems to suggest a list of desirables, a list like the following:

1. Those of us who have immense wealth or are in positions of high public, economic, or military responsibility.
2. Administrators and technicians who will be responsible for the various types of NWO infrastructure.
3. Research and engineering types in general. This includes those able to further develop and manage automation."

Investor 3 interrupts.

Investor 3: "A list like this is meaningless guessing. It likely will only identify some small fraction of those who are necessary for a functioning civilization. Real systems of humans are just too complicated. And making detailed choices from any list like this is fraught with ambiguity and the likelihood of self-serving choice making. And what would we do to find those we would miss?"

Chair JCoS: "I agree. No amount of guessing by us is going to make any such list 100% complete or accurate. Instead, let's help our embryonic city states rapidly evolve into mature entities. Let's keep track of the types of people that are brought in because they are needed. As people are brought in, we need to consider adding the type of capability they have to the list of those we need."

Investor 3: "Very good idea. But let's also list the kinds of people we don't want – unless they are absolutely necessary.

1. Ideological extremists: religious, political, racist.
2. Criminals, gangsters.
3. Mean and violent persons: the ‘natural born killers,’ some of whom get into the police or military.
4. Those with serious defects – physical, mental.
5. Certain, unscrupulous business and finance types that would be a detriment to the NWO.”

Investor 4: “The survivors are going to be a huge number of people – ten to twenty million people in the US – we seem to be saying. How will we build this list without the entire US population finding out about it? And won’t there be tremendous possibilities for cheating and corruption? How can we properly administer it?”

Investor 9: "Well. The necessary vaccinations are still in the future. For the time being, the city states will continue to be developed with people brought in because they belong there for reasons of utility, and quite without any bias to make a list of any sort. By the time the selections we are talking about need to be made, we will have a mature network of city states. At that time we will have a very good list of the various kinds of human capability and talent that we've brought in because we needed or otherwise wanted it. That will be a list we can believe in – and which can be used to qualify more such persons – those who will ultimately fully flesh out the eventual NWO.

Chair JCoS: “This suggests that, when 'cleansing' is imminent, we first vaccinate the inhabitants of the city-states. This can be done under the pretense that some diseases might be or might start propagating among those not in the city states – perhaps by a foreign entity.

Distribution and administration of the vaccinations can be conducted under the auspices of the medical institutions within each city state. As immunization of the city states reaches saturation, persons outside the city states having the skills exhibited in the city states, and having those skills to a demonstrably high level – can also be identified and kept track of. Keep in mind, the list of people and types of expertise will not be so big that a small section of data base programmers, under the control of the DCI or myself, in the CIA or military, can scrutinize the validity of it. Also keep in mind – virtually no one will know the true purpose of the list. The immunizations that will ultimately be delivered, will not be identified as to their true purpose. The doses they constitute will be delivered as precautionary vaccinations intended to protect important people against possible enemy or terrorist attack. Less than a hundred operatives will know enough to infer the real purpose."

Investor 4: "Just when will vaccinated persons be told of their immunization?"

DCI: "When the world knows a deadly disease is ravaging a far away place and is known to be unstoppable."

Investor 5: "We still need to consider how this process might be corrupted by other persons and cliques who should not be part of the NWO – criminal organizations for instance."

Investor 9: "This might be a bit easier than we might think. We should be able to ensure all doses administered within each city state go to legitimate residents and that all residents receive them. Most persons will not even know what they've been vaccinated for – not until the 'cleansing' has been set in motion!"

DCI: "It's outside the city states that we will have a problem."

Investor 9: "And why not use existing factories and tech centers as 'collection points' and 'holding areas' for those intended inhabitants of future, but not yet constructed, city states? We currently need the output of these existing factories, anyway, to supply what automation currently does not provide for our city states. We can get the people we identify into these places in Silicon Valley, the Dallas-Fort Worth area, Raleigh-Durham, and other tech centers. It will require careful monitoring of where doses go, but the pervasive tracking of virtually everyone by the DHS and the NSA should be a big help."

Investor 5: "And how about the personnel in the DHS and the CIA itself that we don't want?"

DCI: "The sections of the military, CIA, and DHS that will know about 'cleansing' will be very, very limited and under my direct control, that of the Chair of the Joint Chiefs, and that of the DHS Director. All the other sections and departments are effectively partitioned into separate organizations and will only know some measures are taking place to counter possible enemy threats. All of us here should presume we monitor what our own people are thinking and what they know – because in fact we do!"

Chair JCoS: "I have a follow-up note to this discussion. The Chinese and others are going to have to accept this 'cleansing' we plan to do – and adopt some form of it themselves. If we have the example of mature city states to demonstrate – that adoption will become much easier."

They agree they have a plan. Most urgent is to develop a connected network of city states that are separate from the

existing economy – then build that network up to become self-sufficient. Much work had actually been started in 2033 and now continues – per ARI plans and via the federal ‘Rebuilding the USA’ appropriations bill passed in 2035.

Report on the Insurgency, 2043

Paul, who successfully implanted a spy cell into the resistance for the Department of Homeland Security, has been promoted to head the insurgency suppression command of that federal agency. He has been called in to report to the head of the agency and the DCI.

DCI: “What is the status of the insurgency? Generally, what can they and what can’t they do?”

Paul: “They keep us from the ‘total information awareness’ that we want and need for our uncontested control of the population. They distribute information to the public which we want to suppress. Also, they are able to limit effective police operations in some big city areas, at least some of the time. Importantly, they enable some goods such as food, medicine, and even light weaponry, to flow to themselves and others in the general population.”

Head DHS: “How in hell did they get the means to do this?”

Paul: “The insurgency built a viable network of loosely coordinated cells in every major city of the country. Using drones, they are sometimes able to disable our mobile communication radio sites and sometimes our fiber optic transmission centers. This implies many of our Internet of Things (IoT) surveillance devices can be failed and often confiscated by them – enabling them to establish a partial means of monitoring what we do.”

DCI: “How did they get the technical means to do this?”

Paul: “There are many competent engineers and technicians among the dispossessed. Useful components for making electronic circuitry, communication devices, and microcomputer based devices are available in a variety of places. And the Chinese are getting components to them as well. Our drones are sometimes captured by them and the electronics replaced with theirs. We are not dealing with witless aborigines. There are many empty factories and buildings in which they are able to store material and manufacture.”

Head DHS: “What keeps us from destroying these cells?”

Paul: “Basically, lack of information. There are many tens of millions of dispossessed. For much of the time resistance cell members are by themselves and know very little about one another. They usually collect together only when needed. The cells do very little communication with one another and know very little about one another. If one cell is captured by us, we glean very little usable information about the other cells. If we capture an individual or intimate couple or several close friends, the cell quickly changes its meeting locations and protocols. What the captured entity knows becomes irrelevant in finding the others. It’s your classic ‘underground’ methodology.”

DCI: “How can drones destroy or disable a communications site?”

Paul: “Easy. Just dump a few liters of sulfuric acid on it. Also gasoline can be dropped, then ignited.”

DCI: “Whatever other capabilities do these people have?”

Paul: “They are getting more and more defections from the police and the military. The men and women of these are becoming suspicious of our ultimate intentions and demoralized by our harsh repression against people they

know are not criminals. These continuing defections mean the resistance is getting fresh information about us. It also means some of our implants are being identified by defectors. In turn, other implants are becoming fearful of being identified – which makes them easy to detect.”

DCI: “Is this affecting operations – that is, our ability to remove cells faster than they can be formed? And are these people becoming able to attack or somehow damage our city states?”

Paul: “We have seen a number of police raids fail, but no attempts to attack the city states or their inhabitants. There have been attempts to deliver propaganda leaflets into the city states using drones.”

Head DHS: “Do you envision them interfering with delivery of material from nearby facilities to the city states?”

Paul: “It’s hard to tell. So far, they’ve not attempted that.

DCI: “Are we losing control?”

Paul: “Not yet – but we are heading there.”

Head DHS: “What can we do to reverse this trend?”

Paul: “Very little. More and more the dispossessed are becoming cognizant of the injustice of the elite not sharing the benefits of automation. The game of getting segments of the 99% to distrust and blame one another is losing its potency. We are becoming the villains.”

DCI: “How long before we become vulnerable to what these organized cells become able to do?”

Paul: “Well. It’s now 2043. I’d speculate maybe five to ten years from now. My discussions with our military people suggest we could use robotic troops and full military force against the most capable cell enclaves – but word of that would likely only accelerate recruitment to their ranks. I’ve also heard from our city state developers that such action

would disrupt the human labor intensive industrial manufacturing we still haven't automated. Perhaps, rather than attempting to intimidate them further, we ought to do something to give them 'hope.'

DCI: "Thanks Paul. I believe you've given us an honest report, and something to think about and maybe act upon."

Boost to the Economy, 2043

The old economy is visibly beginning to crumble. The new city states are proving themselves. The lower classes, now mostly unemployed and descending into deep poverty, are close to general insurrection. It is decided to go ahead with a comprehensive implementation of city states – far beyond that appropriated in 2035. The federal government decides to proceed, even though the debt increase will be huge. The rationale is: this will pick up the economy and placate the 'losers' until it is time to deal with them permanently.

Speaker of the House: "This new infrastructure bill has passed by a super majority vote! The people will now go back to work!"

Investor 5: Speaking subliminally to himself, with a smirk on his face: "Yeah – for the next few years – clearing old slums to make room for the new city states, then installing the new infrastructure. 80% of the allocated money will go to building the automated machinery that will be installed inside the walls."

Barbara & Lester, 2043

One of James's top managers, Lester Pearson, has asked to meet with him in the Company's executive office on the forthcoming Saturday to discuss a sensitive private matter.

James has agreed. It is Saturday at the agreed upon time, and he is waiting for Lester to arrive. At a recent company party Margret and Sky had noticed a subtle but seemingly serious interest between Lester and Barbara, one of James's ladies. Barbara has bore James a son, but for some time has been a distracted and distant partner. That considered, this meeting is not a total surprise.

Lester uses his employee code to enter the back door of the building. He and Barbara enter and take the elevator to the top floor, then enter the CEO's office. Without fanfare and without small talk, James asks both to take seats at a small coffee table at the side of the office, and he himself takes a third seat. Barbara moves her seat closer to Lester's.

Lester: "We need to discuss something very important to all three of us."

Before Lester can speak further, James, in a soft sympathetic voice, interjects:

James: "The reason is obvious. May I ask: When did this relationship begin?"

Lester: "You may remember the company party a few weeks ago. We started seeing one another shortly after that. Mr. Michner, you know I don't like doing anything behind your back, but I fell for this beautiful lady and she for me. She and I can't give this up."

James: "I see that. And others noticed your mutual interest at that party. It is also true that Barbara and I have not been close nor intimate for some time now. She and I have a son, Benjamin, who is seven years old. Have the two of you discussed what could be done here?"

Barbara: "Yes. I want to live with Lester. After we've been together for a longer period, we'd like to marry. I think you

and I should formally break our relationship and share Benjamin as we can agree and as suits him as well.”

James: “I’m generally agreeable. [He sighs.] Actually, this solves the relationship problem between you, Barbara, and myself. I don’t see this as changing Lester’s work relationship with me or the company. I sure as hell don’t want to lose his exceptional technical and administrative talent. Any meaningful man-woman relationship between you and I ended some time ago. However, we do need to be careful concerning the impact of this on Benjamin and the other children. Before making any of this visible to others, I want to talk it over with my family. Barbara, I’ll spend some time with Benjamin tonight – read him a story and get him to sleep. You and Lester can be together tonight, and I’ll expect you to return to the family tomorrow, maybe mid-day if you can.”

Barbara: “Thank you James.”

She is obviously taut. She turns to Lester, brightening up and getting excited.

Barbara: “You were correct Lester, it was best to come out and be honest.”

James: “I’ve an idea. I need to get back home, but let me show you something first.”

He takes Lester to the large computer monitor at his executive desk and brings up the building floor plan. A special room is adjacent to the office. He selects the room with the mouse. An enable button reveals itself; he clicks it. There is a wall panel in the darkly wooded office which is in fact a door. It now slides into the adjacent wall revealing a magnificent room with a large bed, bathroom, a window view through one way glass, and other features you would expect of a very expensive hotel room. James continues:

James: “This came with the building when we acquired it. I haven’t used it for what I think was the real intended purpose, but have stayed here when I was pressed with heavy work. Why don’t you two stay here this afternoon and tonight? There are no cameras or the like, the building plans show no provision that would aid in their installation. You can leave when you please and you don’t have to clean-up. I regularly let our company cleaning services dust, clean windows, and replace bed sheets when they so need. There is a set of buttons for the door on the inside which you can choose to lock or leave unlocked each time you exit the room. It’s your choice to enjoy the room or not. I’ve no problem either way.”

Lester and Barbara stare at each other. Barbara likes the idea.

James: “I’m headed out. Lester, you know how to close up the building when you leave.”

James heads to the building transport area. An auto-piloted vehicle pulls up, unlatches the passenger door, and he enters. The vehicle exits the property. Upstairs, the couple enters the special room and briefly identify all its accouterments. They kiss. She starts to undress. He takes his shirt off, notices that the door to the office is still open, then walks over and hits the button to close it.

James & Benjamin, 2043

Margret and the wives must be told what’s happening. Benjamin must be told his mother will not be with him tonight. James plans to substitute for his mother and explain changes that are coming.

James has just arrived home. He finds Margret and takes her to his home office.

Margret: “How did the meeting go? What was it about?”

James: “Lester brought Barbara. It was as we suspected – the two are in love – want eventually to get married. Barbara wants a separation. I generally agreed.”

Margret: “How about Benjamin?”

James: “We generally agreed we would share. Details were left for future discussion. Barbara will not be home tonight so I’ll read Benjamin his good-night story and stay with him until he goes to sleep. You might check the video monitor to see this goes well – and come in if you think I need some help.”

Margret: “I’ll check on you two now and then. Your other wives must be told about this right away.”

James: “I know. Let’s discuss it thoroughly tomorrow at our usual Sunday issues discussion.”

The sun goes down. It is becoming bed time for the children. James chases down Ben, who is giggling as he whips around every doorway and piece of furniture in the complex seeking to evade his father. James, half out of breath, catches him. Up he goes, into his Dad’s arms. He is taken to his sleeping cubicle. He tucks in with Dad beside him. Dad grabs the story tablet.

James: “What story do we read tonight?”

Ben: “The Littlest Horse.”

James: “OK – ‘The Littlest Horse’ it is.”

Ben: “But Dad – why isn’t mom here tonight? I haven’t seen her since breakfast.”

James: “I’m kind of substituting for her tonight. She’s out with a friend of hers, and they are going to sleep in that

friend's house tonight. We'll see her again tomorrow, about lunch time I think."

Ben: "Dad. I'm feeling kind of worried."

James: "About what son?"

Ben: "Something's different. Mom's not here. She's seemed a little strange for lots of days now. Is something wrong?"

James: "No – nothing's wrong. But something is different. Your mother has found a new friend and she wants to spend some time with him. It's kind of like when you and Franklin in the next building met in the playground outside. You wanted to spend a lot of time with him and you did. That took you away from some of your other friends. But it was a good thing. You and Franklin have become good buddies and often spend a lot of time together. But you still have your old friends and you spend a lot of time with them too."

Ben: "Yes – but mom is very special. I don't think I like her having that kind of friend and not spending a lot of time with me."

James: "She loves you very much, as do I. Ben, this is part of life. Time goes on, you are going to get big and strong and you are going to go to schools far away – to know a lot of things, to learn how to do things that are useful to you and to other people. You are going to be a man, like me. That means you are going to meet and be with other people, people you will want to be with and do things with. Someday, you will meet a grown up girl, a woman, like mom, who you will want to be with for a very long time. You and that woman, will have children, children like you are now. That is how the world works. It is a little frightening, and maybe a little sad when things change, but it happens, we cannot stop it, and we eventually get used to it. Our sadness kind of goes away. We still love our moms

and dads and friends. And we find other friends. People like us are never very lonely.”

Ben: “Dad. I still feel a little scared.”

James: “I know you do son. And you will keep on being a little uncertain, a little scared, until we all get accustomed to this change. But we will get used to it, and that scary feeling will just go away. When mom has to go away again, I’ll come again to read to you. Let’s read that book!”

They read the ‘Littlest Horse’ book and Ben goes off to sleep. James tucks him in, and gently kisses his forehead. James’s eyes are a little wet, and he wipes them with his handkerchief as he leaves Ben’s room.

James & Sky Talk, 2043

A day ago it was learned that Barbara is leaving James. It is bedtime at James’s Home Base. James needs to talk to Sky. Sky has decided she wants another baby by James. They have showered and otherwise prepared for their usual bedtime together. Tonight, however, they both want to talk before unleashing their passion. They are sitting up in bed, covered by a sheet and blanket up to their shoulders. Pillows, propped up vertically against the headrest, are to their backs.

James: “I need to talk to you about Barbara. I felt letting her go and wishing her well was appropriate. I don’t feel much loss, although I am concerned about Ben. But Sky, I won’t ever let you go – not even if you want to. My passion, call it unmitigated want and lust if you care to, for you, has no bounds. I consider myself a gentleman, or at least I try really hard to be. But when it comes to you I’m a terrible

and unrepentant beast. The thought of any other man's sperm swimming in you drives me to the brink of madness. I'd kill any man getting close to you. I'd even keep you against your will. In this I may be totally selfish. But I'm not sorry for it."

Sky: Touching his shoulder. "I know you feel that way, and I have no intention of mating with other men. It's you I want and respect."

They sit quietly for a moment.

Sky: "Let's fuck."

They do so, as passionately as any human couple has ever done. Tonight, some lucky sperm becomes destined to unite with an egg. Sky and James will have another child.

This Changes Everything, 2044

A private meeting of the very wealthy is being held in Seattle, Washington. The ARI plan to maximally automate the economy is proceeding. The intent to essentially eliminate human labor is being pursued not only in research and planning, but in actual investing and construction on a comprehensive scale. The investor class is starting to understand the major implications of what they are doing – which is to make not only labor irrelevant, but also much of the existing stock of factories, properties, infrastructure, and much else (such as mines and petroleum rights). As existing society visibly collapses, as it soon will, what will these investors own, what will ownership mean, and how will everything be governed?

Investor 5: "I think the people in this room represent the families owning perhaps 60% of the current US economy. We've got serious issues to discuss. Our contempt for the

99% and maybe some good logical thinking – I’m not sure which – has now led us to the current predicament. We are indeed displacing the mass of humanity out of the economy and, presumably soon, out of existence. We’ve upset the apple cart. How is this new state of affairs going to operate? Do we now have anarchy, or do we, the all powerful chieftains, become barons and rule as we please? Or do we put something into place which governs reasonably. I’ve some ideas but let’s let everyone here give his or her ideas.”

Investor 1: “It’s obvious. We’ve made the past governance structure obsolete. Who the hell will need the current establishment of City, State, and the Federal governments?”

Investor 2: “The 99% is buying less and less from us. Foreigners can’t sell to our 99% and are buying less from our corporations. It’s collapsing, slowly, but surely. The unfettered market system is failing.”

Investor 3: “Our ownership of nearly everything is becoming meaningless. It seems like all we really own is the new automated machinery and the new residences our automation has built for us and our technician-administrators.”

Investor 4: “Yes – we’re inexorably headed to where we and our technicians are simply operating automation we and they are putting in place to supply goods and services only we and they consume. We might as well have some kind of engineered economy, but one where production is regulated by a combination of market purchases and polling of consumer wants.”

Investor 6: “Popular uprising used to be our biggest fear. That’s being eliminated. You can’t have an uprising if the lower classes are all dead. Now we have other worries:

- What are the various militaries around the world going to do as the economies supplying them collapse?
- Is this new automation truly able to support us, the survivors of this change? Can we really make everything we need long term?
- What new threats will come about with this new organization of mankind? Will new rivalries emerge? What form will they take?”

Investor 7: “I’ll add to that list. To suppress the 99%, we’ve built the police up terribly and turned them into a predatory force capable of intimidating the John Does. But now there is potential for them to hold power over us. So we’ve got to gut the existing police organization, or at least the human element of it.”

Investor 8: “What’s to keep us from playing our old game of cheating our neighbors – that is, one another. Why shouldn’t I own more of the automation than you?”

Investor 9: “What’s to keep our techs and administrators from conspiring against us? Aren’t they the new 99%?”

Investor 10: “What if that damned disease we are about to be vaccinated for somehow mutates, or what if some foreign power designs something like it but different – to wipe us out? Isn’t that a possibility?”

Investor 5: “Well there you have it. You’ve identified every problem that’s been on my mind. Now, what the hell do we do about them? Let’s start with governance. We are not going to deal with any of the other problems until we put some reasonable form of governance in place.”

Investor 2: “We’re putting in place a much better general population: we, our administrators and techs, our and their

grown children – all intelligent, practical, useful, and able to work with others. As suggested by the JCoS Chair at CIA headquarters two years ago, let's build, with this new and responsible population, some kind of governance that would distribute real governing power and thus prevent the various forms of tyranny. What's the alternative?"

Investor 3: "Any alternative to democracy, which is what you are proposing, is necessarily an elitist society. But there are all kinds of problems with any elitist society. Just look at history. Its operations would not be transparent, which is inherently dangerous and invites public criticism. Most people are kept in the dark about what it's doing. Any such body easily loses connection with reality – until its bad decisions cause horrible destruction. Such a body eventually becomes corrupt. And now, with high technology – with automated manufacturing and security – centralized control of the various institutions of society is an even more dangerous arrangement. It leads to absolute tyranny. It is insanity to allow it. We need decentralization of power."

Investor 4: "You know, in a way we had a kind of real democracy – among ourselves, the rich and influential. We had a multitude of organizations: Trilateral Commission, Business Round Table, Davos, the various 'think tanks,' and dozens more. It was informal, but it did generate policy which the formal governments came to implement. Maybe formalizing a democratic structure among the new population makes a lot of sense. It would decentralize, it would be very transparent, it would bring in the citizenry in a very constructive way. The people making policy would then suffer the direct consequences of such policy – and would seek to correct the deficiencies."

Investor 5: “I wholeheartedly agree. Maybe ARI can find some specifics on how best to do this.”

Investor 6: “I say let’s try it on an experimental basis. Maybe we can select a random set of neighborhoods from among our recently started NWO city states, then let them govern in this fashion over a limited area of public responsibilities – say economics and foreign relations. If successful, increase both the number of neighborhoods and the scope of what they deal with. We can monitor what happens, then decide whether to proceed to full scale.”

The group agrees. They create a task force to carry out this decision and call it **Investors 10**. They will meet one year hence to discuss the results.

Chinese Study, US Doctors, 2044

The World Research Institute (WRI), in Beijing, has the mission of understanding the world outside of China. It is expected to provide the Chinese leadership with information that could conceivably influence decision making. China has roughly the equivalent of the US NSA, the super spy on all available information in electronic form. Let’s just call it CNSA. CNSA has somehow been able to gather huge data sets on American doctors and patient relationships. It has also been able to get the genetic data sets (of the DNA sequences or genomes) of many US doctors, their patients, and their children. The WRI staff, partly out of a need to test some correlation software programs, partly out of the possibility of finding something politically useful against the US, and partly out of curiosity – decides to see if there is a correlation between male doctors’ DNA and the DNA of children born to the more attractive of the doctors’ patients!

The relevant data sets are made available to a young researcher. She is given carte blanche to seek out any correlations. In order to determine whether a mother is considered attractive by US standards, a small set of visiting US students at a nearby university is asked to judge that characteristic from photographs in the data sets. The doctors she considers are young, that is under 35 years of age. Several months later the researcher gives her results. Two correlations stand out.

%babies of attractive women sired
by their young, male doctors 5

%babies of unattractive women sired
by their young, male doctors < 0.1

WRI concludes that there is significant hanky-panky going on between doctors and attractive female patients in the US medical system. The WRI staff laughs!

Staff Researcher: “Keep in mind the patients here are the professionals, or wives of professionals: computer programmers, engineers, lower level corporate managers, and the like. What’s not so funny is the huge number of unemployed in the US – unemployed that are now a very large proportion, mostly white, of what used to be called ‘the middle class.’ Electronic eaves dropping by the NSA does not capture their DNA, nor the DNA of the children born in the underpasses and other hovels of the poor. No hospital instrumentation captures that. We have no data on the children of blacks, or poor whites, sired by drug pushers, drug lords, and predatory businessmen in return for a few

dollars or a dose of illegitimate drugs or a poor paying job. It's very pitiful.”

Another Researcher: “Of what use is this information?”

Staff Researcher: “Socially, the US is truly in decline. And that is dangerous when you consider the tremendous and largely uncontested military power that country has. We need to remain conscious of that – always. And are we made of a different cloth? As many of our people are getting some wealth, they are becoming selfish and corrupt. It is the influence you see in people when they play the ‘Monopoly’ game that was popular in the US a century ago. Maybe we should look at our own birth DNA. Our doctors, corrupt officials, dandies, and business types may well be engaging in this and other socially damaging activity to a greater extent than we imagine. It is a measure, albeit a very small one, of future trouble in the general population.”

A Democracy Experiment, 2044

The democracy experiment has been launched. Neighborhoods in the San Francisco, Seattle, Denver, Chicago, New York, Washington DC, and other City States have been selected. All policy decisions made by this experimental set are delivered to **Investors 10**, as they call themselves, there to be passed on to the formal local or federal government legislatures as appropriate.

The following is a typical monthly ‘neighborhood General Meeting’ at the Michner Family residence for the ‘exercise of genuine democracy.’ It is an experiment in which the family and neighbors agreed to participate. Adult neighbors to the family are included as well as the adults (18 years or

older) of the Michner family itself. Sky is the meeting moderator this month.

Sky: “This meeting is hereby called to order. Two weeks ago we issued the monthly request for issues to consider at this meeting. A week ago all of you voted on those to establish the priority in which you desired them to be considered. The top three you chose are:”

She shows them, and the vote totals, on a projection screen in this meeting room.

- 1) Consider UBI (Universal Basic Income) as a solution to automation displacing labor. 11
- 2) Is the automation we are building adequate and secure? 5
- 3) Should the US merge with other nations? ... 4

Sky: She continues. “Looks like we discuss UBI today.”

Amy: “I think we need it. We, all of us, should be getting the benefit of this ever expanding automation. It took a civilization, over many generations, to get human science and technology to this point. Not only should the benefit be shared, but the very ownership and policy control of it ought to be public.”

Judy: “I generally agree. But we have an ownership problem. We, as the public, have let a relatively few own practically everything, including this automation. That, historically, has been useful in getting things done – so let’s not get into a blame game. But, maybe those who currently own this automation can donate their ownership of it into

the public weal. UBI then becomes kind of a ‘dividend’ accruing to all of us, and we all have a vested interest in maintaining it and developing it further.”.

James: “Good thinking everyone. And I’ll add another twist. Why not just bring into the public weal, those segments of automation that are quite stable and mundane. Let the entrepreneurs and savvy investors continue to shepherd those areas that are likely to quickly evolve into even better forms and formulations. As those areas become mature, wouldn’t it then be best to put them under general public control – increasing the UBI or dividends or whatever they should be called?”

The attendees look at one another in agreement.

Sky: “I think we got agreement here. Do we have some people here that want to form a little ‘work group’ to write this up as a governing policy proposal?”

Review of the Democracy Project, 2044

The democracy experiment among the better of the population is under way. A random sampling of some fifty neighborhoods was selected and set-up to operate. They have been in operation for almost a year and the results need to be reviewed by the ten principal investors that initiated the experiment. They, the **Investors 10**, meet to do so.

Investor 5: “OK boys. You’ve all got copies of the results. Let’s see how these people did. I think the items I chose for the top of the list tell the story. Let’s go through those five, then decide what we want to do next. The first regards some kind of UBI.”

Investor 1: “Let me summarize that one. This called for the owners, that’s us, of several highly automated industries

they specify, to turn our equity in these into public corporations owned by the citizenry. These are industries quite stable in their technology and which produce products that satisfy rather everyday needs for large numbers of people. Here an *Information Dispatch*, concerning UBI, was proposed and sent to the other neighborhoods for their consideration. A consensus (85% in this case) of those neighborhoods were in agreement. It was then processed as a candidate *Policy Directive* and sent to us to be legislated into federal law and implemented. We received the *Policy Directive*, and I took charge of it. Several of my firms, amounting to some five percent of my wealth, fit the description. So I turned those into corporations directly owned by the public and had the dividend streams directed, as UBI, to that part of the public involved in our little experiment.”

Investor 5: “That may seem an overly generous relinquishing of our wealth, but it’s the kind of thing we had better get in the habit of doing. Of course, such a regular cash disbursement will have to go to all of the surviving population in the near future. How about the next *Directive* we received?”

Investor 2: “The second policy directive that came through the network process concerned sponsoring a regular and significant social exchange program between seemingly rival nation states. This proposal had a 77% agreement rate among the totality of neighborhoods. I handled this one by establishing a trust fund to pay the transportation and other costs of such a program, and then by working with the State Department to begin diplomacy to implement it with the Chinese and Russian governments. This has the promise of building some real trust between the ruling circles of these

major nation states and possibly reducing the risk of unwanted war as we proceed with our population reduction plans.”

Investor 5: “I think we are getting the assurance we need. The top levels of our population are actually quite good at identifying important issues and developing policy to solve them. We need more evidence, which we can gain by increasing both the number of neighborhoods and the scope of what they consider, but so far it looks promising.”

The sitting investors agree and the program is expanded to many hundreds of neighborhoods and to essentially no limit on the type of issues considered. The experience and data gained from this expanded project will become the basis for real specifications on what the New World Order will look like and which will be established when population reduction is implemented a decade hence.

The Aldrens Meet the Michners, 2045

It is now widely known among the top echelon of the 1% that there will be a New World Order, and that it will be composed of a world-wide network of moderately sized 'city states' as they will be called. ARI has informed the experimental neighborhood units that it seeks ideas about how the eventual NWO democracy should be structured and how it should operate. The "Michner" neighborhood unit in the embryonic Northern California City State has invited the "Aldren" unit in the Washington, DC City State to send representatives to the Michner compound to discuss several important NWO policy issues. Anna Summerset and Andy Aldren fly to the San Francisco area. They meet up with Sky

and James at the Michner residence. The entrance door opens. Anna sees Sky and Sky sees Anna. They gaze at one another for just a second. A look of apprehension comes on both their faces. Neither expected the other to be so terribly attractive. The men notice and wince – each knows there is family trouble ahead.

James: "Hi! Please come in."

The women each put on a smile. The men shake hands. The women give each other lukewarm hugs. The foursome enters the great room and the robo porter takes the visitor's travel packs to the accommodations the Michners have prepared for them. Both couples have had their mid-day naps and light lunches. They are ready for a tour of San Francisco – both the old, decaying portion, and the new rapidly growing city state. Anna and Andy freshen up, then rejoin Sky and James. They all head down to the Michner robo car where Anna sits to the left of James in the front seats so James can describe to her what they see out the left window, and Andrew sits to the left of Sky in the seats behind so she can show him what they see.

James: "Anna. See the wall separating the current boundary of the city state from the old Haight-Ashbury district?"

Anna: "Yes, I do. But that area is being torn down."

James: "That's what we call 'No man's land.' It's where automated machinery works, day and night, to clear pretty much everything – both street level and above, and old infrastructure below. No one wants to be there. You see further out? That construction is for the new wall that will replace the one we just saw. The area here, being cleared, will soon become an almost totally automated electronics manufacturing park where highly complex integrated circuits will be made. Most of these circuits will be soldered

onto modules which will then be incorporated into virtually all finished electronic products."

Anna: "Where do the displaced people go? In the DC area we have a smaller proportion of displaced, and they are quickly relocated out of the area."

James: "I've heard that." He says that while looking at her with a sad look on his handsome face. "In a minute we'll see some pretty typical places where many of our 99% live." In a minute they reach the other side of the new wall.

Anna: "It's a very wide region of dilapidated buildings, streets, garbage, and very hopeless looking people – mostly just standing or laying around – waiting for they don't know what."

James: "This is what it's come to."

Anna looks at James. She feels his hurt, and his shame that he cannot help these people.

Andrew: "We seem to be getting back to the new city state."

Sky: "Yes Andrew. What we saw is quite depressing. What we are about to see, is far more hopeful. That new construction to the side of us is for a very modern hospital, and an associated medical and pharmaceutical research facility. It will have a huge amount of automation – yet because of the people intensive nature of medicine, there will be huge staffs in both. New medical and chemical knowledge will quickly be applied. New treatments which show high promise, will quickly propagate to clinical use." Sky's bright hope for the future is evident to Andy as he gazes at her beautiful face and graceful, perfect woman's body.

The foursome heads back to the Michner compound. The two ladies are with one another for a short while, and so are the gentlemen. The four again come together.

James: "Andy and I have a suggestion. Before we begin discussing the policy issues that brought us together, you ladies might want to do something different tonight, just this once mind you."

Andrew nods in agreement. Sky and Anna look at one another with smirks on their faces.

Sky: "OK boys. Let's hear it."

Andy: "James and I know you both are on birth control right now. Anna, I've seen the look on your face as James and you conversed today. And Sky, if you are willing – let's exchange bedtime partners tonight."

The ladies are agreeable.

The next morning the four of them are in the multi-purpose Great Room, the one the Michner neighborhood uses for its monthly General Meetings of the democracy network.

Sky: "We are here to help generate NWO policy. We first need to consider what kind of telecommunications system is best. The second will be to provide guidelines on how the system of personal and public security will be structured and how it will operate. The formal design of these will be done by ARI, but they want some input from people like us."

Sky: "First topic everyone. Andy knows policing. James knows electronic communications systems. Andy and Anna know the information needs of hospitals during emergencies – and so does James since he provides communicating devices and systems to hospitals. How do we do telecommunications in the NWO?"

James: "The past telecom system was an evil thing. The upper class, needing to spy on what the common people were thinking and doing, made sure that necessary portions of communication applications were located in the telecom network facilities they owned – so that corporations and government could intercept what the people said and did. Texting, email, conferencing, internet surfing – were all snooped upon. Pretty much all data, voice, and images were stored for later retrieval and analysis. This information was used to understand how people perceived their station in life, how their voting could be manipulated by politicians, how advertisers could induce people to purchase what they did not need, how to further distract people from their social and economic reality – and to identify potential trouble makers – those who would contest undemocratic rule.

What the NWO requires is a diametrically opposite telecom system – one which ensures privacy when people so desire, and ensures that people can reliably communicate with one another when they need to or merely want to."

Andy: "So what do we propose?"

James: "A system that was described by a David Isenberg, an employee of AT&T in the 1980s. It was called the 'dumb' or 'stupid' network. The network itself merely transmits packets of bits of user information from any point a user connects to the network, to whatever other termination point that user wishes to communicate with. When the information is properly encrypted, regardless of what kind of information it is, nothing and nobody in the network can snoop. All that potential snoopers can see is random appearing streams of bits of '0's' and '1's'."

James pauses.

James: "This is the system we should recommend."

Anna: "So how do you provide telephone service, emails, and all else from this 'dumb' system that doesn't do much?"

James: "All app processing – to do telephoning, file transfers, video conferencing (think Facetime), texting, emailing, internet-like browsing, and so on – is done by user equipment on each users premises."

Andy: "Let me understand something here. An app to do Facetime video for instance, would be totally in your PC – and not at all in the dumb network?"

James: "Yes, and that's the point. The video and audio – in both directions – would be handled by computer programs in your equipment and in the device used by whomever you're conversing with."

Andy: "But you've got to get that program, that app, from somewhere. What's to keep that program from sending your conversation to some corporate-like organization or government?"

James: "You get it from the Open Source people – or from your nephew who is expert in such computer code. For security you have to choose intelligently – but you can do so. With the old 'Facetime,' for example, you had no alternative to the app which snooped on you!"

Andy: "Why Open Source?"

James: "The computer code is public and checkable. And there are plenty of potential whistle blowers to expose attempts to sneak-in code to enable snooping. Checking what's in the program code – and providing good application code in the first place – is what Open Source is all about!"

Andy: "Could you engineer this system into reality?"

James: "No. Advanced Solutions is too small. ARI should specify what needs to be done. They should start by examining the Isenberg documents from the 1980's."

Sky: "James, would you like to put together all this into a policy recommendation?"

James: "Sure. But you need to be my Secretary."

Sky throws an empty plastic cup at him. He ducks.

Sky: "Let's do the second NWO policy issue. This has to do with privacy, public safety, policing, and adjudication."

Anna: "As an unmarried woman, I really wanted my private life unknown to anyone except the few I really trusted. The only exception I can think of would be a police or medical emergency – and then I would want that limited in time and extent to what was really necessary to be revealed."

Andy: "How can we accomplish that? As a police person, I needed to know – instantly – what I was getting into – for my safety and for the safety of the other persons involved."

Sky: "I think all of us accept what the two of you have just said. Let's try to find guidelines for a system of security which presumes those concerns are requirements. But let's put that into the societal framework that we anticipate. In the NWO there should be less need for adjudication. In the past, the highest degree of social control was granted to a hierarchical legal system – which aristocrats could control – giving them power over the general population. Thus, social control was removed from the community as a whole. In the NWO, community should be given a much greater role in adjudication, and the formal legal system of judges must be closely watched by the general population."

Andy: "I like it. To judge and possibly punish the more minor offenses, elected judges might be used. Their

decisions would have to be published, and when contested by public complaint, could be subject to modification by public consideration.”

Sky: “For a serious offense, a judicial panel of randomly selected judges and citizens could be formed which decides the verdict and punishment. These are cases where the damage to the public or to a person or persons is significant. Again, if the public disagrees, the outcome must be publicly debated and determined. What do all of you think?”

They all like that overall structure and the bias toward community review and consent.

James: “That addresses the judicial aspect of societal rule, but what about the day-to-day operation of the policing system? Here, I have a suggestion. I think we should heavily use automation and computer networking to ensure criminal deterrence – but in a way that best protects privacy.”

Andy: “And just how do you do that fancy balancing act?”

James: “By normally keeping security related data local to the persons being protected and limited in retention time to the short period when the data might actually be used for its intended purpose. Normally, the data would be collected in electronics on the person or in her residence, then automatically erased after a short period of time. That is, unless there occurs an event in which the data should be locked and stored for immediate safety or police use, and then for later retrieval for possible court use. I can design such a system using technology in use today.”

Andy: “How would such an emergency event be declared, and how would you prevent misuse of such a mechanism?”

James: “An event might be declared by the person, trusted friend, or artificial intelligence built into the local system.

Misuse would be minimized by use (again) of Open Source software – which is constantly examined by experts in the general public. As said before, Open Source is a culture and a set of people who tenaciously look for back doors and programming errors – and who are very happy to blow the whistle when warranted.”

The group discusses further and agrees. James, Anna, and Andy are charged with writing up the policy document.

Sky: “Well – that does it folks. We did our job!”

It is evening. Anna and Andy will return home tomorrow morning. The couples take their leave of one another and head to their own bedrooms.

Sky: “Remember what you told me about other men entering me?”

James: “Yes. And I still very much feel that way. In this instance, I felt I had to let it happen. I’d rather you knew how it felt to be with this handsome, experienced, competent man than to fantasize about it in the months and years ahead. How was it it Sky – please be honest?”

Sky: “It was good – and I liked him – starting from when he reacted to what I told him on our robo car tour. And you’re right – if I hadn’t slept with him, I’d have wondered what it would be like. The upshot is, you both are very worthy, competent men. If I ever cheated, it would be with someone like you or him.”

James sighs.

James: “That’s how I hoped you would feel. And when I was with Anna, it was similar to what you just told me. She’s a very worthy, attractive woman. But Sky, it’s you I love and want to be with continually.”

They hug and kiss.

It is morning and time for the Aldrens to head home. The ladies make their goodbyes. To one another they say: “If ever we’re going to cheat, these are the guys to do it with.” The ladies hug – this time with genuine affection and respect. They will continue to be friends and will remain in contact – but without involving their husbands.

Heavy Military Space Lift, 2045

The US military conducts an intensive lift of massive payloads from its Military Launch Facility in Florida into low earth orbit (LEO). These payloads form an all encompassing shell of stations around the globe. Every position on Earth, at any given time, is within the sight of at least three such stations. Each station is visibly large with an extensive array of energy gathering solar panels, and a structured array of almost identical modules. Internal structure and purpose is currently unknown to the public.

Chinese Bio Program, 2045

It is now known the US has launched a very significant military capability into Low Earth Orbit. Large solar panels are part of each of many dozens of such stations which appear to be laser energy directed weapons. Each station must be presumed to have the capacity to target, track, and destroy many targets simultaneously. These are almost certainly capable of quickly destroying missiles during their launch phase, and also many other kinds of targets such as truck convoys, aircraft in flight, and virtually anything on the ground or ocean that absorbs infrared and microwave radiation. It is a terrible new threat to China’s nuclear

deterrent, military capability, transportation system, cities, and industrial system.

The PLA (People's Liberation Army) feels a biological attack capability would be the best 'Mutually Assured Destruction' response to this. New, genetically engineered viruses could be manufactured, delivered surreptitiously to many locations on the planet, then released in response to any kind of attack on China. It is decided to build several manufacturing complexes distributed throughout China: two in remote mountainous regions, one underground outside Beijing, and others. All have associated research institutes, specialized machine manufacturing capability, energy stations, and the ability to operate for months without receiving supplies from the outside. The scope of this capability, to be finished in seven years, is to simultaneously produce both infective agents and immunizations for several types of agents. In size, it must be capable of producing immunization doses for hundreds of millions of people within a period of only a few months

Mega Church Revealed, 2047

It is Sunday at the Mega Church of Christ in Oklahoma City, Oklahoma. The huge Church and attached TV and radio studios are lit up and broadcasting a 'warm-up' program preceding the main Sunday event: the weekly mass at 11am. The media technicians are on duty, stage hands are busy with their studio preparations and tasks, and members of the congregation are beginning to collect in the huge mega church, which can hold thousands of worshipers. The podium is at the front of a raised stage which can also be

used for plays. The stage has sets of flowers and a huge Christian cross, which will be the backdrop to the mass.

The preacher, a mega evangelical, is in his private area not far from the stage. He is undressed, as is the attractive young woman who is a parishioner and who is married – but not to the preacher. She is sitting on the side of the large bed, and he just left the bathroom and is approaching the bed in happy anticipation. He has a full hour before he must conduct the Sunday mass.

Unbeknownst to the preacher and the object of his lust, several media technicians know of this tryst and have contacted the husband. They have worked out a plan, which now commences.

The husband, having a key provided to him by one of his new friends, goes to the preacher's suite. He pulls a small handgun (a toy actually) from his pocket – and then, with his other hand, quickly unlocks and opens the door. The sinful pair turn their startled heads toward him and see the gun. He rushes toward them, but seems to trip and fall on the rug. They rush to the door and exit before he can recover. Outside is a man, a tech, that blocks the way to the public bathrooms and other rooms interior to the complex. They take the other direction. After they turn the corner, there is again a choice as to which way to run further. Another technician blocks one way, leaving only the way to the main stage. This technician chases after them, giving them no choice but to run faster. At the threshold to the stage, the technician pushes and forces them onto the stage. The stage entrance/exit on the other side of the stage has another technician posted to retain them.

They are stuck on the middle of the stage running back and forth, completely naked, she with a necklace bearing a holy cross, and he with a neck piece with a picture of Jesus. Then they try to hide behind the huge holy cross which is in the middle of, but toward the back of, the stage. Video cameras are viewing the back of that also – from the side.

The husband, as pre-planned, has caught-up with the pair behind the cross. He gives his wife a huge towel with which to cover herself up. He tells the preacher to take his \$#@* phony church and stick it up his ass. He kicks the preacher in the groin, then forces him, bending over from the pain, out onto the open stage again. He then helps his wife adjust the towel and leads her to the control room.

While all this is going on, the TV cameras are running, and the various microphones are turned on. All this content gets recorded onto high quality storage equipment and is instantly available for on-the-air transmission. This and more has all been prearranged. The first two technicians are now in the media control room. They have switched the main transmission feed from the previously airing religious warm-up program to the scene playing out on the main stage. This was broadcast, live, to some ten million or more religious viewers all across the US, Canada, and via satellite to many other parts of the planet. The content captured by the high resolution video cameras and microphones was recorded not only onto the standard TV storage media, but also onto several high capacity memory sticks – which will soon find their way to the more modern version of the internet – for later viewing by more than one-half of the world's population. The contents contain not only ultra-

sharp video (think 4K Ultra), but also the cursing of the preacher.

One of the women techs has brought the woman's clothing and purse to the control room. She takes the wife and her belongings to the nearby dressing room so she can get properly dressed. The husband and technicians are in the control room, laughing, and giving high fives to one another. From the technician's point of view, the mission is accomplished!

The husband takes his wife home. They do not speak in the robo car that takes them there. At home he takes her to the bedroom. He pulls up two chairs facing one another. He sits her down at one, himself at the other.

Husband: "When I first heard of this, I almost went insane – I wanted to kill him. The thought of another male touching you and penetrating you was too much to bear. And that you betrayed me! It would have been easier if you had just thrust a knife through my heart. Then I realized this is just as much my fault as yours. When we were first married, you must have had some respect and love for me. I've made you lose it. Wife, I love you, and now I intend to again be a man. No more six packs, no more TV sports, no more nights out with the boys. No more masculine immaturity. And I will exercise regularly, lose my belly fat, and look like a man again. We're going to work ourselves out of this. First, are you pregnant by him?"

Wife: "No. I've fucked him a number of times in the last several weeks, but I don't think I'm pregnant."

Husband: "If you soon are pregnant, are you willing to take a DNA test of the amniotic fluid to be sure it's mine? And are you willing to have an abortion if it is not?"

Wife: “Yes.”

Husband: “Are you willing to let me make love to you now?”

Wife: “Yes. I’m nervous and very rattled right now, but maybe you can warm me up.”

Husband: “That’s understandable. And yes, I’d like to try. I really love you so much. And I’m so ashamed of being so self-centered, so selfish.”

Wife: “I’m so sorry too.”

Husband: “Let’s shower and get in bed.”

He really pays a lot of attention to her feelings. Without hurting her or discomforting her in any way, he shows his terribly strong passion for her. They make real, passionate love – like they never have before. He even cries (with joy and happiness), and she soon joins him. They now respect one another, and both are truly worth respecting.

Husband: “I almost lost you. But I didn’t, and I will never, ever take you for granted again. Thank you God, the real God – not the phony pretense in that awful church!”

Wife: “Yes – I feel the same way.”

She takes off the cross around her neck. It was bought at that church. She will later throw it into a recycle bin at a grocery store. She will become pregnant, and when it becomes safe to test the amniotic fluid, it will be verified that her husband is the father.

Husband: “My aim, my full responsibility – from this instant forward – is to keep us, this family, together and prosperous for our and our children’s future.”

As they anticipated they would – the technicians were fired from their jobs – ostensibly for misusing the station equipment and for not following church rules concerning

the reporting of misconduct – but in actuality for not passively allowing an owner to exercise his privilege to engage in gratuitous sex as he pleases and for damaging the revenue stream making the church’s owners, which includes the preacher, very wealthy. The husband, wife, and technician friends form a business based on his know-how of electronics and their understanding of how TV and radio stations operate. It won’t be easy, but they work hard and will make it!

In retrospect, what happened here was: the wife and husband and techs – all acted ‘out of the box,’ outside the boundaries of their confinement, violated the evil rules of hierarchy – and achieved ‘aliveness’ – the kind of existence that comes with real freedom – the kind that Walter White gained, for a brief period of time, in the *Breaking Bad* Netflix movie series.

Hidden Moves, 2047

Denise and Rick see the Mega Church Revealed expose.’ They watch it several times over, often glancing and smirking at one another. Bells ring and lights turn on in their heads.

Rick: “Denise, why don’t you find out what happened there in greater detail. Who was the woman? What techs obtained the video and audio? What did the techs, woman and husband do afterward?”

Denise: “I’ll do it. I’ll fly out to Oklahoma and get the scoop.”

She does so. She talks with the husband, Darrell, the wife, Jenna, the lady tech, Ellie, and the male tech, Jim (the one who was most expert at station operations and the instigator

of the debacle). She learns they are establishing a company whose main product will be a computer app to semi-automate station programming and distribution operations. They will also sell low cost video cameras, audio recorders and communications equipment. Their company's name is Mass Media Solutions (or MMS), and has already acquired a workable line of Chinese made devices. A week later, she is back to Chicago and Schaumburg. It is after supper at the Stuben household.

Denise: “Rick, I hit a gold mine. Not only is the company (created by the fired techs and woman's husband) vending exactly the kind of electronic equipment the resistance needs for our project, but also the application software needed to discern, store, and forward the action we anticipate during a raid!”

She continues.

Denise: “What we need now is some way to contact the resistance cells to let them know they can and should get and set-up this stuff to prepare for what many of them are going to suffer.”

Rick: “I agree. But I see problems here. How can the cells order, receive, pay for, and install this stuff? A bigger problem still is how can we get that equipment into the enclaves likely to be attacked without the DHS getting tipped-off about our intentions to expose their injustice and cruelty?”

Denise: “I've thought about that too. I want to set up a couple of small businesses. One will install security systems for doctor's offices, first aid stations, and the like. I have contacts in my past as a registered nurse to help with that. The other business can cater to the fearful but better off part

of the population. I can siphon off some of the material obtained from MMS, then get it delivered to participating cells. It can look like inventory or damaged and returned material on the books of my businesses. Once we get orders from cells, we can do partial deliveries and get payments using intermediaries who do drone swaps to transfer product and payment – just like is now commonly done. That answers your first problem.”

Rick: “Good. But how are you going to get resistance cells interested and able to obtain these systems from you – without the real purpose of these systems being revealed?”

Denise: “By vending these systems as just ‘advance warnings’ of a raid. When a large raid occurs, we will have programmed the app to do more than just warn the other cells and enclaves – it will also connect to receptive technicians in the mass media, and those able to re-transmit the content far and wide on the internet. Darrel and Jim at MMS said they could help us do that. Keep in mind there is a fair amount of inexpensive AI built into even simple electronic products. Such AI can easily distinguish a raid from ordinary cell operations and simple security situations.”

Rick: “Sounds good.”

They agree to do it. That becomes her principal occupation. At work, he watches for signs her activity is becoming visible to the authorities.

Ruling Class Debacle, 2049

The resistance continues to grow. Huge areas, both in the countryside and in the big cities, are populated by citizens without jobs and without the means to purchase goods and

service in the markets dominated by the 1%. Most people exist as vagrants, scavenging, growing food on abandoned scratches of land, trading their various skills for food and shelter, and in many cases by prostitution and theft.

Resistance cells are widely established. Significant patches in big cities have become dangerous for the police to patrol. Communities of neighborhoods rife with resistance cells are operating under various kinds of informal councils which bring some capability to settle disputes, to distribute necessities, and provide other help to those who need it. To an extent intolerable to the US ruling class, these communities are gaining legitimacy and a means of armed defense, both of which threaten higher authority. An area a few miles to the outside of, and northwest of the Chicago City State has come under such organization. The factories within that area are, moreover, failing to deliver their portion of goods and services still required by the rapidly expanding Chicago City State from entities outside itself. The DHS and the suburban authorities in that area decide to regain control – and to make an example of that usurpation of state power.

Detailed operational plans are developed by persons from the DHS, the FBI, and the Schaumburg Police Department. Rick Stuben is the assigned SPD person, and he is to be the overall commander of operation ‘Secure City.’

The assault teams and vans, arrest wagons, mobile medical stations, command vehicles, periphery guards, and engineering squads move into the designated square mile district. Quick, short bursts from Low Earth Orbit (LEO) satellite infrared lasers take out known resistance

communication boxes placed on roofs of industrial buildings. Normal electrical power in the district is removed from service. It is about one hour before daybreak in the Chicago area and one human 'early bird,' in one of the buildings occupied by the resistance, notices the electrical power has just gone out. She looks out the window. After a minute her eyes adjust to the darkness and she sees various vehicles disgorging human figures and equipment – not more than a thousand feet or so away. In disbelief she digests this for another half-minute, then panics, yells to the other building occupants, and runs to the security console – where she presses the 'security enable' button with a finger of one hand, and the 'security action' trigger button with a finger of the other hand. The dormant (battery powered and normally hidden) station security application and equipment go active. The large screen monitor on the facing wall lights up, and shows the current views of the security cameras. Most important, the dormant communications gear begins communicating with collaborating resistance cells – several of which are outside the purview of the raid. Real time data, from this and other cells, is streaming to the outside world, and individuals in the mass media and elsewhere are being notified of what they should pay attention to!

The assault teams do their work. The engineering teams break through barriers and disable those cameras and sensing stations they can find. But many cameras and sensors are very cleverly hidden or disguised. And data streams issue forth along multiply redundant circuits and laser paths. The break-ins where people were sleeping, showering, brushing their teeth, dressing, and doing what people normally do – are electronically witnessed, reported,

stored – and even shown on the monitors of nearby cells – where the intruding police, swat teams, and soldiers can see what their comrades in other rooms and buildings have been doing – including beating unarmed persons, assaulting half naked women, and even neutering males they have caught. The ancient raids of Genghis Khan, Attila the Hun, and the Vikings come to mind. Attractive women are taken to vans, and recorded conversations indicate they will not be taken to police stations for normal, formal booking.

Many among the invaders, and especially the crews supporting the assault teams, are disgusted. They say nothing but are beginning to turn. Some regular TV stations, in the Chicago area, and many far more distant, are showing video and audio streams coming at them real-time. Technicians and even some program directors are choosing to broadcast the juicier incidents as they are occurring and will replay them later when more TV viewers are awake.

The raid backfires. It induces revulsion and disgust. It does not work to intimidate the masses into obedience – rather the police and military are viewed as bullies. The enclave is eradicated, so the raid is an operational success. But the overall effect is to discredit the police and governing authority – and the ruling class that commands and benefits from that authority.

Order to Implement, 2049

The President, Vice-President, Speaker of the House, DCI, Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, Secretary of State, and Director of the DHS have a quick meeting in the Oval Office.

President: “Do we all agree it’s time to set the plan nicknamed CLEANSING into motion?”

To a man and woman, they soberly agree.

Vice-President: “Is everyone here prepared and able to do what has been specified in the plan?”

With heads lowered, they each in turn say the words ‘prepared and able.’ The institutional machinery – to identify the persons to vaccinate, to produce the immunization doses, and so on – is set in motion.

Some Men Want to See You, 2049

Rick is standing by the window in his second story office, overlooking the parking lot to the rear of the SPD building. A black limousine pulls into the fenced-off area, stops at the main rear entrance, and two men get out. He recognizes one as the head of Homeland Security. The other appears to be a Very Important Person – probably a man of wealth who is also of importance in the ‘shadow government.’ He thinks he may have seen this man before. His gut tightens. A minute later, the desk clerk gives him a call: “The Director of the DHS is on the way up, is with a VIP, and they wish to see you.” Rick would rather face an armed enemy ambush than this. He puts down the phone, faces the door, walks to it, opens it, and waits for the elevator door to open.

Director DHS: “Captain Stuben, we want to talk with you.”

They all go into his office. Rick sits at his desk. The Director and Mr. Larkensen take to the seats in front of it. Rick, obviously apprehensive, his lips stiff, speaks:

Stuben: “How can I help you?”

Larkensen: “We want to thank you for your excellent preparation for and handling of operation ‘Secure City.’”

Rick is puzzled.

Stuben: “It was a complete disaster.”

Director DHS: “You mean the ugly publicity?”

Stuben: “Yes, it outraged the public, and it encourages defections from the security ranks. You are thanking me for that? Why would you want that?”

Larkensen: “A number of us needed to learn how close we are to general and uncontrollable rebellion – even among the security forces. Now we understand.”

Director DHS: “It was quite clever – how you arranged for full scale broadcast of the operation – even as it was taking place. Denise told us how brilliantly you did it. She’s told us everything.”

Rick is ashen. He lowers his head.

Stuben: “Then you must know it was my fault. She only played along because I intimidated and forced her to do so.”

Larkensen: “Bull shit! She worked with you heart and soul. Don’t tell me my youngest daughter could be manipulated by you!”

Stuben: “She’s your daughter??”

Rick is totally confused. He thinks, as he has the inner strength and the training to do. Larkensen uses his security phone to call the limo and tells the driver to have Denise come up to Rick’s office.

Stuben: “You all knew my sentiments when the raid in 2043 took place? And her hiding in that utility closet was planned?”

Larkensen: “Precisely. It was lockable from the inside.” Denise enters the office. She walks over to her Dad and hugs him. She then goes over to Rick and kisses him hard. Rick cry’s as he holds her in his arms.

Stuben: “What now? Does this mean ‘cleansing’ begins?”

Director DHS: “You’ve got it man. You engineered the necessity for it – which obviously we wanted you to do.” Rick collapses into his desk chair. Denise pulls up a small chair to sit close and next to him.

Denise: “Rick, you did the very best you could. We all know you did what you perceived was right and honorable, and you showed tremendous courage. You have nothing to be ashamed of. I love you. My dad and the Director know you will not be a danger to the New World Order as a member of it. We need a few decent men in our security forces – which are being formed in the city states. Your mom, right now, is being transported to Dad’s compound in the city state just a few miles from here. You, I, and she have been given a residence there which we will now go to. Your mom will be vaccinated and so will you.”

The Director and Investor 5 each come up to Rick, put a hand on his shoulder, look him straight in the eyes, and shake his hand. They all go out to the limousine.

Rural Gun Owner Crackdown, 2049

The US government has assiduously tracked owners of weaponry since the 2010’s. These owners have repeatedly been warned, since the late 2020’s, they must turn in their firearms. The largest proportion of them have not, as FBI and NSA databases show. Because of the crackdown in 2030, many now live in hard to get to rural and often wooded areas. The locations of these hideouts are known to great precision (less than one meter error). It is late winter and snow is covering the forests and most rural areas. Fire danger from lightning strikes and other phenomena is minimal.

Somewhere in Montana a grizzly bear sees one of these hideaways, securely tucked-away from any recognizable road and difficult to see from the surrounding territory. The bear just happens to be gazing upon this peaceful cabin and the thin smoke issuing from its little chimney. Then – with no warning – the snow on the roof vanishes. It has been heated to many hundreds of degrees Centigrade. A second later, a horrible heating of the cabin begins – then ends, less than ten seconds later, with a terrible explosion of fire and charred debris. The bear is perplexed. Nothing in his experience can explain this. His better instincts tell him not to get closer. He quickly turns back into the thicket and puts his mind back to finding food. When the site is examined by humans in the coming Spring, it is found that ammunition exploded and that an intense heat was somehow generated in the area of the cabin, heat sufficient to incinerate all combustibles and to warp or liquefy most metal. All weaponry in the cabin was destroyed. But on the day this deed was done, 30 military satellites, each with ten independent infrared lasers, destroyed 360 such hideouts per laser per hour for 12 hours (the time each satellite was within range of targets). This was 1.3 million such hideouts destroyed and likely some two million law breakers given ultimate justice.

Greg's First Time, 2052

Greg is Jame's first son. He's now turning seventeen years old, is an undergrad electrical engineering student, and is working, part-time, for his dad at the primary family engineering business which is called: Advanced Solutions.

When Greg was sixteen, he started volunteer work trying to help several families who had lost all means to obtain necessary incomes. One family's father had lost his engineering job due to automation, but the son, named George, eighteen years old and quite handsome, was interested in the kind of computer programming that James and Greg needed for the business. They took him in on a trial basis and he very quickly became sufficiently useful for them to employ him at a better than subsistence salary.

Greg then tried to help another similarly disadvantaged family. This family had a very beautiful teenage daughter. Her name was Betty. She and Greg were both smitten at first sight. Greg tried to find a way the family might survive, but that was hard. The father did not have the skills that could command a living salary. It happened that Greg woke up nights fantasizing about being with Betty. Greg started taking her to his secret hideout – a place where he sometimes studied, and also designed electronics for both the business and his school lab work. Usually, she did her school work while he soldered circuits, looked stuff up on the internet, and did some computer programming.

On this particular occasion, Betty becomes bored – and perhaps a bit jealous of Greg's obsessive focus on his work. It happens that Greg looks a lot like his grandfather Ted – the male that grandma Margret chose to be James's birth father. Betty knows nothing of Ted, but has the same interest in Greg as did Margret in Ted – for pretty much the same reasons.

Betty: “Greg. Look at me!”

Greg, somewhat puzzled, turns around and looks at her.

Greg: “What is it?”

Betty: “Greg, you didn’t bring me here just to watch you give all your attention to stuff like that circuit board – now did you?”

She looks at him intently, and with no little amount of dismay. Greg looks at her and ponders what she has just said.

Greg: “I guess I have been ignoring you. Betty, you know I like you a lot, a real lot. I’ve been lax in letting you know how I really feel. I’ve been taught that a male needs to be honest with a woman about his feelings toward her, but the lady in any relationship should really be in control.”

Betty: “Well then, why don’t you ‘be honest’ with me?”

Greg ponders for a minute or so. He is searching his feelings about her.

Greg: “Truth is, Betty, I’m smitten by you, and I really want you, and badly so. I’m actually a virgin – and I don’t know how good or bad I might be making love. But with you, I sure would like to try. What do you think?”

Betty: “I am too, and feel the same way. Why don’t we undress one another?”

They do so. They make a silly game of it. They tease one another – even laugh. But it is serious. They kiss. They hug. They smell each others skin and hair. He gently fondles her breasts, she his muscles and erection.

Greg: “I better put on protection.”

Betty: “Yes.”

She helps him do so.

Greg: “Why don’t I lie on the sleeping cot, and you get on top?”

Betty: “OK.”

They do so, somewhat timidly at first, but also with excitement. Some of what they do is clumsy, but they know

they are learning, and are always honest with one another and sensitive to each others feelings and concerns.

Over the next several months, Greg and Betty experiment and try a lot of variations. They learn a lot. Both gain a deep understanding of their own and their partner's expectations and needs. Both are becoming competent players in the principle game of life, and both are gaining self-confidence.

Time goes on. Betty wants to marry, but Greg doesn't. He feels really terrible that he can't do what she wants. It then occurs to him that the young man working for the business would be a perfect match for her. He arranges for Betty and himself to meet with George at a nearby restaurant. He introduces them to one another letting Betty know how useful George is and that he is reliably employed, and letting George know Betty is not married and not his fiancée. The two of them talk about stuff for almost an hour and pay lots of attention to one another. By the time Greg finishes eating, their plates are still mostly full – and they cannot keep their eyes off one another. An 'emergency text' comes in on Greg's mobile phone (which he arranged to have sent) and he tells them he has to leave right away. He asks George to please take her home when they finish eating. He leaves money sufficient to pay the bill and tip, then hurriedly leaves. When he calls her, the next day, she tells him she has fallen in love with George, and that he needn't call her again. He wishes her and George the best. Months later, they are married.”

CIA Report on US vs. China, 2053

China's position as a world power has been increasing for many decades. The following is a hard copy summary of the CIA's general report. Although the full report is biased, it is widely used for decision making. The summary reads:

Economic:

China. The population is slowly increasing but stable. China's PPP (Purchasing Power Parity) now exceeds that of the US by more than two to one. Most Chinese live in cities of significant size and in reasonably comfortable apartments. People receive medical care that approaches that of the better European nations. Children are educated through advanced degrees, depending upon their potential, without family cost. The work week averages less than 24 hours, and automation of the Chinese economy is high and increasing at an accelerating rate. Unemployment is managed to be low by downward adjustments in the work week. A Universal Basic Income, funded through publicly owned automated industry, has been in effect for over two decades, and as such automation becomes more pervasive it is increased accordingly. The benefits of a combination of a socialized and entrepreneurial economy are becoming more and more apparent.

US. The US population is slowly decreasing as elderly and unemployed are forced to emigrate. Those employed in the professions and skilled occupations are surviving but insecure. They do not know whether they will have continued employment. Social services and security are minimal and inadequate for the unemployed and non-wealthy retired. Automation is proceeding, but its benefits are directed to those who own it. Wealth is highly

concentrated. It is estimated that only a thousand or so investors own over fifty percent of the US manufacturing and agricultural economy.

Military:

China. China has developed and fielded a potent military to defend its territorial interests in and near China itself. Its closely coupled land-naval capability can put US naval forces in its near waters at serious risk – in large part due to sophisticated land based hyper-sonic anti-ship missiles. The PLA is highly mobile and automated. Its land combat forces include battalions of highly maneuverable robots and self-piloted support vehicles. Its space network had been capable of destroying US surveillance and communication satellites, but that capability has been degraded by US placement, into low Earth orbit, of high-energy beam weapons capable of destroying a large multitude of simultaneously launched anti-satellite missiles.

US. The US retains its full-spectrum world-wide combat capability. Its space communications and surveillance network is robust. Its naval presence is everywhere and is essentially invulnerable – except in Chinese territorial waters. Its land operations forces are largely automated with robotic combatants, support vehicles, and supply chains. They are highly mobile and can be fielded most anywhere in days if not hours.

Public Perceptions:

China: The Chinese people know they have been lifted out of poverty and that their nation and ethnicity have gained world-wide respect. Their children are being educated, their medicine is improving, and their future looks bright under the current regime. The right things are happening and

problems, such as pollution, have been or are being addressed. However, the future is never certain. War is a possibility, opportunities for most people to become entrepreneurs are very limited, and freedom of expression is limited. The notion of real democracy is not completely out of the thinking of most Chinese.

US: The US is bifurcated. Those who are wealthy, and those in the professions, enjoy a comfortable and rewarding life. For them, things seem in order and they would like that to continue. However, among those hired at will – and thus dependent upon earned income – there is the fear of loss of employment. And for those who have little or no means of income, life has become desperate. These are encouraged to simply leave the country. Those who stay and become indigent become harassed by the police and exploited by the more capable. In 2053, this segment is perhaps 40 to 60 percent of the US population. At this point of time, it can continue to be controlled only by extreme intimidation.

Chinese Visit James's Family, 2053

An exchange program has been setup whereby prominent US and Chinese families become closely familiar with one another. The intent here is for the families to become so engaged with one another that they learn how the other family views the world, what values they hold dear, and how they think about the larger issues humanity faces.

James and Sky meet the Jians at the Northern California Airport. The Jians, the husband and wife and two children, all speak English – although the children very haltingly. After airport security verifies the visitors identities, the

Michner's limousine takes the party to the Michner residence.

Sky: "Mrs. Jian, let me show to you and the children your accommodations. We are so honored to have you with us!"

James: "Professor Jian. While Sky shows your family your living quarters, let me show you the facilities we enjoy in this building."

Sky and James give the family a detailed tour which includes their normal living quarters, but also the general meeting room, exercise area, the shopping floors open to the public, and much else.

Several days later a critical conversation takes place between Professor Jian and James. They are in the Michner's large living room. The remainder of the two families are away shopping and seeing a movie.

Prof. Jian: "Dr. Michner, we finally have a chance to discuss matters that we both feel are important."

James: "Yes. I, and others I know, are very concerned about the relationship between our two countries. China is becoming more powerful in every respect. The US maintains its military dominance, but is diminishing in almost every other area of national importance. And now, we have this intent, on the part of those of great influence within the US government, to pursue a horrendous 'population reduction' project. It's very dangerous."

Prof. Jian: "That's a good summary of our own thinking. We both want reasonable outcomes. How do you frame our predicament?"

James: "My personal starting point is this nasty 'Realpolitik' syndrome all countries have been engaged in for centuries. Every country, every clan, every group, work to maximize

their power over the others. When one gets in position to weaken or destroy a rival, it does so to gain more power for itself – even when war and mass destruction is certain to occur.

Any sensible person has to ask: What are the reasons for this behavior? To answer this, you have to put yourself into the thinking of a King, or President, or whoever. If you don't engage in aggressive behavior when you have the chance to gain more power, then the opportunity diminishes with time, and another actor gains the advantage. It is then likely he will use it against you. It would have been better for you if you took the opportunity when you had it in hand. Do you see it the same way?"

Prof. Jian: "Yes. That is the terrible logic of it. But there is another aspect. If the ruler does not behave this way, he will be replaced, even killed – and another leader put in place who will do Realpolitik."

James: "Yes! And that suggests something. What if the populations, of the states about to go to war, actually govern, and not a ruler or aristocracy? Might they, knowing the suffering about to be unleashed, avoid this outcome?"

Prof. Jian: "Of course, we have no examples of that."

James: "Aren't we about to? After the cleansing, won't we have populations more capable of ruling, of understanding this predicament, and thus able to avoid the consequences of going to war?"

Prof. Jian: "How would these two democracies actually avoid the conflict?"

James: "Maybe by making their societies more alike. If both are truly democratic, they will have local organizational units that collaborate on making public policy and both will

vote on issues. If they extended their collaborations and voting to include the organizational units of the other, then they will merge their governance functions. To generalize, why not merge, or at least couple, the various institutions of one nation with corresponding institutions of the other.”

Prof. Jian: “An interesting idea. Let’s consider what you just suggested on an institution by institution basis – and see what we run into.”

James: “Very good. Why not start with the democracy networks of the two states. And why not make the first step the sending of Information Dispatches (studies a neighborhood’s work group produces from its detective work) generated in the US network to the Chinese network, and vice versa?”

Prof. Jian: “That would work for nationwide issues. Also, “sister” neighborhoods could be identified and could copy their communications on local issues to one another. Each document would have to be translated, but that should not be too difficult.”

James: “Out of such information exchanges, the peoples would get to understand each other much better. With time, collaboration on common issues would occur. This is a form of merging.”

Prof. Jian: “Yes. And how about a more difficult institutional merge – the militaries. One way would be to identify regions where joint Chinese and US units could be formed. Their duties would be two-fold, one to defend the region from any intruder – including the US or China. The second would be as units of a gradually merging joint US-Chinese military. They would be given orders for use, beyond defense of those regions, only when the US and Chinese governments both agree to that use.”

James: “Yes. It occurs to me there are some very particular areas that certainly will require joint military protection: namely scarce resources located around the world. For instance, Ecuador has the lithium required for batteries used in transport vehicles, and China has the mother lodes of many rare earths required for important metal alloys. Joint military forces could protect these areas and installations and perhaps guarantee fair market access to these vital resources.”

James continues:

James: “We’re starting to think in a fashion that leads to a common US-Chinese government. That would solve the hegemony dilemma. It could serve as a unified governance model for the entire planet.”

Prof. Jian: “This is grossly oversimplified, but it’s not crazy. Automated manufacturing might be another area of common effort – so could medical and scientific research.”

James: “I agree. Why don’t we suggest this to other people? Maybe we could organize some real-life examples and see what we run into.”

James conveys this conversation to the Investors he knows, and to the DCI. Prof. Jian does the same to the head of the PLA and the Communist Party of China. It will be taken seriously by both – especially since the cleansing is becoming imminent.

Several days after the above discussion, another discussion between Prof. Jian and James takes place. It concerns the cleansing itself.

Prof. Jian: “What are your feelings about this ‘cleansing’?”

James: “Very troubling. Emotionally, I’m anguished. I’m horrified by what we will do. I see, in my mind’s eye – all

the suffering, the mounds of dead children, the trillions of children that will never be born, the suffering of people who have not consciously done anything wrong, who have no evil intent. I see them all, vanquished in the time of a single rotation of planet Earth around the Sun. I wake up at night in a sweat. I can hardly believe we will do this. I look in the mirror when I groom and am ashamed. I think – where is my imagination? Why cannot I find a solution to this predicament that befits what I really am, an engineer – someone who builds and solves – for the benefit of humans? Sometimes, Professor Jian, I cry.

But in the final analysis, I consider the apparent alternative: let the benefit of automation be shared. Let the masses of people, with all their prejudices, foolish beliefs, irrationality, impulsiveness, and vulnerability to demagoguery, gain political control as a consequence. Then I see disaster as well: war, both nuclear and biological, carried out under the banners of patriotism, ethnic superiority, religious righteousness, and other irrationality. When I think of this alternative to the ‘cleansing’ I am equally aghast – maybe even more so.

So my vote on this was neutral. I could neither support nor reject cleansing.”

Prof. Jian: “When this humanity-wide holocaust becomes apparent, what are you going to tell your children?”

James is in tears. His face is contorted in anguish.

James: “I’m going to do what no father or grandfather should ever have to do. I’ll lie to them. I’ll tell them its cause was unknown – we didn’t know where the virus originated. I’ll tell them that we only had enough time to

vaccinate only a small proportion of the population to survive it.”

Prof. Jian: “And when they ask why no poor people were saved?”

James: Head low. “I’ll lie again – I’ll say we had to save the most productive people first.”

Prof. Jian: “Dr. Michner, let me tell you something. The heads of the PLA and the less cynical of the Chinese Communist Party feel exactly as you do. If there is a God, may it have mercy on us all. Before this terribleness is unleashed, let’s distribute and merge our two populations of expected survivors as much and as widely as possible. Also, let’s bring in the Indians and Russians as well.”

James: “Yes.”

This exchange, also, was communicated to important persons associated with Professor Jian and James.

Bio Attack Protection, 2053

The misuse of microbiology will now be a permanent danger and threat to mankind. Collectively, the people of the entire planet need to ensure such technology is not being developed to damage, or threaten to damage, mankind and other parts of Earth’s ecology. Total transparency of all laboratories capable of such development is necessary. One preventive mechanism consists of ensuring that anyone, particularly one inside such a lab and learning of an attempt to misuse the technology, is able to ‘blow the whistle,’ to deliver a warning to citizens outside.

To assure delivery of such messages, communication termination points of a ‘snoop proof’ global

communications network must be available in every nook and cranny of each and every bio lab and every facility which might, somehow, be turned into a bio lab.

Every organization, with potential for such lab work, must undergo a rotation of people from the outside, to ensure that activity inside does not develop such technology.

Every part of the planet must truly be democratically controlled – ensuring many people know of attempts to deliberately damage or intimidate humanity through such technology.

And there must be some reasonable separation of communities of people – so that infection is blocked, for significant periods of time – from infecting others.

Finally, automated means to rapidly detect malicious bio organisms must become part of humanity's security system. These must be developed and put on guard everywhere.

Needle Work – Immunization, 2053

A meeting is taking place in the large conference room on the top floor of Automation Builders in Dallas, Texas. The principal owner and Chief Operating Officer has called together his top people. The company used to employ some seventy persons. With the automation recently installed, they run it with ten, but that ten is highly skilled and difficult to replace.

CEO: “As some of you may have noticed, I had three visitors a few days ago. One was my business partner Rex Lamberg, another was a gentleman from the Department of Homeland Security. It seems there is some concern that the

US could be attacked by some kind of lethal biological agent, an engineered virus of some sort. I was asked to identify the people critical to running this business. All ten of you are here right now. I was then told there is a vaccine cocktail to protect against the potential attack microbes. The third person was a registered nurse working for Homeland Security. She is scheduled to visit us three Saturdays from now – to immunize us and our families. My wife, I, and children will be here 8am in this room on that day. I know it may be an inconvenience, but each of you and your immediate families need to be here. This is a big surprise, but it is no joke. Another thing. Apparently there is only a limited supply of this vaccine, meaning the entire population cannot be vaccinated. So we have to be hush, hush about it. I expect that you will be so. Very little will be said when your family members are vaccinated. They need only be told it is a special measure for precautionary purposes. Those sons and daughters who are out of town need to fly in and be here, even if only briefly. You and I know there will be some people in other companies of national importance who will mouth off about these vaccinations, which will result in rumors. Those rumors will be denied, and those who cause or repeat them will make the authorities quite unhappy. One last thing, the few of you who do not have full US citizenship, will have that granted on the day of the vaccinations – that is a US Presidential executive order.”

The Third Saturday, 2053

The immunizations at Automation Builders in Dallas, Texas have taken place. The top people in the company and their

immediate families are leaving. One very attractive young woman (who is the administrative secretary and who has no immediate family) remains. When the CEO is free of conversation with the others, she approaches him.

Young Woman: "All of your other employees here have a critical talent – it is easy to understand why they should have received this special protection. But why me?"

CEO: "I can't tell you – just be very glad you did."

Young Woman: "Does this mean I'm indebted to you or to someone else?"

CEO: "Absolutely not. Just go about your business here as you always have. Remember, no one is to learn about this."

Doctor's Son Johnathon, 2053

Johnathon, who is now ten, and his mother are visiting the doctor for his annual visit. This is in Portland, Oregon. Neither the mother, nor the doctor, has ever told him of the secret between them. The doctor does a thorough examination – in the very examination room where the secret was arranged.

Doctor: "Young man, you are in as perfect a condition as can be. What are you doing with yourself these days?"

Johnathon tells him about his computer games and his Karate class.

Mother: "He reads a lot, better than anyone in his school. And he's a very good student, pretty much all 'A's.'"

Doctor: "That's great. Keep up the good work! And I want both of you today to receive a special immunization. It is to protect against some class of virus that the government fears might find its way into the human population. I just took mine this morning."

The doctor pushes back the band-aid on his shoulder and shows Johnathon the puncture point and little red spot where the needle entered. The nurse comes in and gives the two patients their immunizations. Johnathan and his mother leave the medical building and take the next auto-taxi back home. While the auto-driver pilots the vehicle, they talk.

Johnathan: “I like that Dr. Beker. I wish he were my Dad. Dad is so grumpy, fat, and sloppy – and always has been.”

Mother: “Johnathan, when we get home there will be a moving pad parked outside. We will have only four hours to pack the things we, you and I, really want to keep: pictures, toys, clothes, our very favorite books and movies, and especially the kinds of things that we cannot buy in a store.”

They arrive home. Mom’s things were already packed by her before they left to go to the doctor. She helps Johnathan go through his things, helping him choose what he would probably miss having if he didn’t take them. In a few hours, his belongings are in travel boxes. They load those into the moving pad. Mom inputs some information into its control box, and it moves into the street and begins its journey.

Mom sits down at the kitchen table where a document, she and her attorney have prepared, has been left for Dad to read when he comes home – which is expected in a few hours. She writes a note telling him to meet her at the Portland Transition Office at 8pm – if he cares to do so. She and Johnathan then go outside and wait for an auto-taxi, which she has requested, to pick them up and take them to their new home. This home is in a new residential complex owned by Dr. Beker. It houses the several ladies, and their children, that form his family.

Husband is Told, 2053

Johnathan's mother has told her recent husband of ten years to meet her at the Transition Office if he wishes to speak with her. She has chosen that place because there is a guard there and an enclosed booth giving some privacy. He shows up at 8pm, the specified time.

He walks up to the reception desk and asks to speak with his wife. He is taken to a small conference room where his ex-wife is sitting and waiting.

He: "Just what the hell is this all about? And where is my son?"

She: "The document and note I left explained it quite well – except for one small detail – Johnathan is not your son. He and I want nothing further to do with you. The house and bank accounts are all yours – to do with as you please – I abrogate any right I might otherwise have had to them."

He: "Why are you leaving me? And for whom, may I ask?"

She: "I married you only because I was desperate for a place to live, clothes to wear, food in my stomach, and access to medicine. I don't love you, don't have any real use for you, and I never did. Living with a stupid, arrogant slob like you was pure torture – as was letting you stick your repulsive flesh into me. Pretending everything was OK and normal was exceedingly difficult – but, until now, simply necessary."

He: "Then why did you marry me. Why didn't you find what you considered a 'better man' than me?"

She: "Because the 'better men' were already married or unemployed – that's why – pure and simple!"

He: "I'll sue you."

She: “You can try. The divorce I’ve filed is absolutely legal. The courts have decided that thousands of times.

Johnathan’s parentage is easily established by DNA analysis, which has, by the way, been done by the real father. You can make a bigger fool of yourself if you wish, but the outcome of both the divorce and my rights to raise Johnathan are not in doubt. You can now watch your football games and movies, drink your six packs, and lord over your subservients at work – to your heart’s content.”

He: “You bitch!”

They leave the room. She thanks the Transition Office manager for letting her schedule and use the meeting room. She then leaves the building. He attempts to follow her, but the guard tells him to sit in the reception area. He will not be free to leave until she cannot be followed. After several minutes the guard tells him he may leave. He leaves. The attorney he consults verifies that her claims are correct. The empty house is his. And no, he has not received, nor will he receive, the special immunization being offered to only the select few.

A Criminal Network is Destroyed, 2053

The US rulership has tolerated, even encouraged and supported, various criminal organizations. These were useful to intimidate the lower classes, and to do certain ‘dirty work’ (sex trafficking, drug distribution, assassination, etc.) desired by the wealthy and ruling elite. That usefulness has now ended. These people and organizations are now a potential threat to the cleansing process about to begin and to the New World Order.

An elimination operation is about to be launched. Such criminal organizations usually contain one or more strategically placed 'sleepers,' individuals who have been implanted by the FBI, CIA, or some other secretive policing or subversive institution of the government. Each such sleeper rarely contacts his or her legitimate superiors, he plays his role with seemingly total loyalty to the criminal organization. He, or she, is very hard to detect by the crime organization. He is there for some time in the future, when he, or she, will be used in some significant way.

The sleeper in this sweep up operation is a she. She is a 'madam,' a broker in the trafficking of young women from Russia and Eastern Europe into the US. The women are captured by organized crime in those countries, sometimes just kidnapped right off the street or drugged in night clubs. Sometimes a brother, on drugs, needs money and aids the kidnapping. Sometimes a rejected suitor, or jealous neighbor, facilitates the deed. The women destined for the Western countries, including the US, are quite attractive. Once captured, they are threatened with death, and usually raped by the captors – that is part of the captor's reward. The women are told if they do not cooperate, their family will be harmed, especially any younger sisters or female cousins. Crime in those countries is ubiquitous and unpunished – ever since the coup against the Soviets in 1991-1993. The ones destined for export, at high prices, are given fake passports and other identification, then flown to New York, Chicago, or another big city. There, persons, like our madam have their operatives pick them up and deliver them to the persons or places that have been prearranged. Advertising the product is surreptitious. While the internet

might be indirectly used, most business is conducted by word of mouth. The wealthy often know shady individuals who are able to deal, for a stiff price, in such transactions, and who have a reputation of being both reliable and able to maintain confidentiality. But today, the sleeper we see before us is activated and will be used to set-up her portion of the trafficking network for apprehension.

An auto-piloted vehicle, ostensibly from a random pool of currently available such, picks her up. But instead of the usual path to her residence, the vehicle takes a slightly different path and picks up another person. It is Bill, her FBI supervisor. He uses a digital pad to communicate with her in the passenger compartment – this is to ensure no audio device in the vehicle or on her person can intercept a verbal conversation. It contains instructions on how to wear the apparatus he is about to give her, which she will place into her purse. The pad tells her that the transactions she performs – both the transfer of women, and money exchanges with the various criminal participants in the network – will be immediately reported to an FBI assault operations center. She is to act normally, but can expect she will soon be contacted and transported to her new life as a normal person. This will occur just prior to police capture of as many members of her portion of the crime network as possible. There will be no Miranda rights read to those persons, and all necessary violence will be allowed. As much of the network as possible will be destroyed. Her cell will not be the only one. And those captured will each reveal what they know. The usefulness of the crime networks to the ruling class is over. The destruction of this network will be thorough.

[Movie version: Video and audio of women captured, delivered, money given to Madam, money delivered by her to network agents, and other dealings are shown.]

Elite of US, China Meet, 2053

Since the US elite is determined to do serious population reduction, the US and Chinese elites must agree on how the world order will operate when this reduction takes place. Some kind of merge of national interests and power must be achieved between these principal world powers. These elites meet in a heavily guarded compound outside Beijing.

The six principals at this meeting are in almost continuous contact during the day. Brief breaks are used to command assistants to investigate facts important to the primary discussions.

PLA General: "We still have difficulty believing and accepting that you will do this 'cleansing' you adamantly espouse. Beyond the audacity and contempt for mankind you reveal, the implications for what will remain of humankind seem impossible even to imagine, much less to explore. You are about to destroy not only flesh and blood – but all structure and stability in human society."

US Investor 5: "We plead guilty to our contempt for the majority of current humans – and have no remorse, nor offer any apology. And, yes, the implied magnitude of change to human society certainly destroys what tenuous security humans currently enjoy. We know we put you, and others, into a terrible predicament. That's why we wanted to talk with you here today."

US Investor 5 continues:

US Investor 5: “The stability you refer to is an illusion. Look at our current US – China relationship. In respect to economic strength and power China has become ascendant and the US is in relative decline. In military power the US is dominant world wide, in most of the oceans, and in near space. Many analysts tell us that in the past, large scale war has occurred in this kind relationship about 75% of the time. We are in what is called the ‘Thucydides Trap.’”

Party Chairman: “Yes – we know it, have studied it, have simulated it in great detail, and are in anguish over it.”

US Investor 5: “We are also. It is the biggest uncertainty in this terrible business. Let's try to find a way out of it – today.

[There is a brief pause.]

We need to work out of it, but we cannot do so with minor adjustments to our relationship. We are forced to consider a large restructuring of our societies to accomplish a desirable future. That may seem impossible. But I remind you that large changes can sometimes be done successfully – when a well architected solution is specified, and implementation proceeds in small, well-designed, and verifiable steps.”

Chinese Investor: “How do we get out of the trap?”

US Investor 5: “We want to present a solution. To understand it, we have to examine several parts. Let's consider them – one by one. If we can come to agree on the parts, it leads to a solution.”

The Chinese look at one another. All three want to hear what Investor 5 has to say.

PLA General: “Let's examine what you have.”

US Investor 5: “First, the current, overall system of private and concentrated ownership in the US, based on the self

interest of the principal owners, is no longer viable. I am a prime example of that, and I hereby admit it. The highly automated economy, coming into being, must have its parts controlled by, and therefore owned collectively by, the people who need the goods and services that the automated economy provides."

Chinese Investor: "I agree. My ownership was warranted when I truly operated as an entrepreneur. The recent automation we've developed needs to be operated for the benefit of the general public. That implies the public truly needs to oversee and control it."

US Investor 4: "Second, the policies by which people and institutions are governed must be determined collectively. Tiny syndicates pursuing their self-centered objectives – rather than the public good – cannot continue to govern. This implies that governance must be distributed to the general population. It used to be called democracy. But democracy has a critical requirement – the population charged with governance must be capable of doing so."

PLA General: "We can't argue with that."

US Investor 5: "Third, the vast majority of the current population of the US, and I dare say of the world, is not so capable. Its attention is on spectator sports, drama charged movies, and self-indulgence. It is not on the issues crucial to the sustenance and evolution of the human species. That vast majority has further shown its incapacity to govern by its gullibility to propaganda, its submission to irrational superstition, and its unreasonable ethnic prejudices."

Chinese Investor: "I have to agree with that. Most Chinese used to be quite cooperative with one another. But once we got into some wealth, we changed – we got individually

greedy. And most of us have been much too gullible to advertising and political nonsense."

US Investor 5: "That's our point. That is the principle reason the current governing class in the US is committed to a large and highly selective reduction of the human population in the near future."

US Investor 5: "Fourth, the US and China currently have very similar societal control structures – this in spite of propaganda intended to manipulate their different populations. In the US a small circle of very wealthy investors, corporate big-wigs, and elements of the 'military industrial complex' control the political and economic life of the US and much of the planet. In China, the top echelon of the Communist Party, the top echelon of the PLA, together with the influence of billionaire investors and high ranking managers of industry – essentially control China. In neither country do the 'ordinary people' determine policy. Policy in both is determined primarily by the vested interests of the few at the top – restrained only in that the policies produced must either be hidden from the public or proffered as beneficial to that public."

PLA General: "I am pleased to hear you admit the similarities between our nation states. We can't deny this."

US Investor 5: "Fifth, the ages old 'realpolitik' framework of how nations relate to one another, of each maneuvering to gain power and advantage over the others, has now made us rivals – dangerous protagonists. Yet, other than to gain some kind of hegemony or 'king of the hill' victory – just what are we trying to gain? In a world of pervasive automation, which is what we both are hell-bent upon obtaining, our material needs and wants will be fulfilled by this newly

developed machinery. Particularly, in a world where populations do not deplete natural resources, which is the world we will soon have, what are we fighting over?

To this I can think of only one reason – to deny the other the option of subduing and destroying us. This is a real danger, to be sure, if the two entities are controlled by aristocracies that have the motivation to eliminate the other and take over its domain. But with two democratic realms that have the same world outlook and desires for the future – what would induce the one to pursue that option over the other? In that instance would it not make more sense to merge and join with the other – in the likely expectancy of benefiting from the others’ skills and resources and from our useful diversity of habit and thought? And that brings us to how we might resolve our apparent predicament.”

Chinese Investor: "Now, just a minute! We are NOT two democratic realms with the same customs and outlook."

US Investor 5: "True. But we can get there. Here's how: Why not plan on merging the institutions we are building and intend to use in the post reduction world (the New World Order, if we want to call it that)? Can we not devise a plan to gradually bring the better of our populations together, some to the US and some to China, to begin working and living and governing together?"

Chinese Investor: "How can this be done? How could we even begin?"

US Investor 5: "We have an area of many square miles in the old San Francisco metropolis which we’ve turned into a ‘city state,’ a model for the kind of semi-independent unit of civilization we would like to establish over our entire nation after the cleansing. It has a shipping accessible port and an

airport able to accommodate commercial aircraft. It is highly automated, governs itself democratically, and has been operating quite well for over a decade. It is adjacent to a large undeveloped area suitable for additional residential, civic, and industrial development. That area is not near any major US military site – and I happen to own it. It has some natural barriers to the surrounding territory, and it is easy to keep separate from surrounding populations. We could build on this undeveloped portion. Its population could easily become half US citizens and half Chinese. All new inhabitants would come voluntarily but would have to satisfy required city needs for doctors, teachers, technicians, engineers, police persons, administrators, and so on. You might find a similar site on the coastline of China. Both would be highly democratic and politically organized according to a book I have with me.”

Chinese Investor: "We've known about your city states for well over a decade, but not of the intent to merge foreign populations into them. Just what do you mean by this 'merging'? Does it mean some kind of forced 'integration' where males and females of different ethnicity are coerced into mating or marriage?"

US Investor 4: "No. It means the kind of 'mixing' that has occurred in the US over the last several hundreds of years. It's where youngsters go to school together, where many neighborhoods have residents of differing ethnicity, and where people of different ethnicity work together and govern together. Inter-marriage does occur over the generations and eventually the population does become partially biologically mixed. But that happens gradually and by choices freely made by the individuals involved. No propaganda, mind manipulation through mass media

productions, and so on is tolerated. The original cultures survive as long as the populations care to continue them. In practice the cultures merge – the more desired cultural elements of each ethnicity being adopted by persons of other ethnicity. Witness the merging of the English, Germanic, Slavic and Italian populations of the mid-twentieth century Chicago's Northwest side. And keep in mind, the people we anticipate bringing together are first rate, the best. Funding for the initial, merged US city state site expansion would come from both the US and Chinese governments. A similar Chinese site could be funded initially by both the Chinese and US governments in order to build infrastructure, initial housing, and the automated manufacturing and agricultural plant before it would begin normal operation. The operation of these sister sites would be completely transparent. Both the US and Chinese governments would have information access to all economic transactions and would be privy to all the political decisions made by the populations and their local governments."

US Investor 5: "One more thing. There are many facilities currently nearing completion in the existing US city state I've just described. We could transfer many Chinese citizens into a number of the residences, and we have positions open in both the schools and semi-automated factories that will be completed soon. That is, we can begin doing this right away."

The US and Chinese Generals look at one another.

US General: "Let's look into this further. Will everyone here provide a very small team of experts to meet regularly to try to come up with a detailed plan? I'm cautiously hopeful something like this can actually work."

The participants agree. Regular work sessions are arranged. Three months later, Chinese citizens begin to reside and work in the Northern California based city state. Less than a year later, the Chinese sister city state (formed from a new city already under construction) begins operation with an initial influx of Americans and Chinese.

US-Chinese Shared Cities, 2053

The merging of Chinese and US citizens into a new section of the Northern California City State has been taking place according to the plan agreed upon in the preceding scene – and quite successfully so. Here, in a Middle school classroom, the students, generally aged 11 to 13 years, are teaching each other English and Chinese (with some teacher help).

And today, there was a visitor from China who wished to see how the American end of the experimental project is going. At lunch time he joined the students in the cafeteria.

Laura Michner has returned home from school. She and James are discussing her day.

James: “How’d it go today honey?”

Laura: “There was a man who came to school today. He was a Chinese man. He spoke to us in class. He said he hoped this project we are in will work well – that it would be a model, he called it, for all of China and all of the US. Later he sat down to lunch with me. He asked me if I had seen any homeless people where I lived in the US. I told him no, but that I and my siblings had asked our dad about that. I said that my Dad, that is you Dad, told us there were many homeless and that was why he had many wives – so some

could escape that. I told him that you said that we were lucky to have a nice house, and that you thought and hoped that people in the future would all have nice homes and that women would have their own husbands if they wanted. I told him you said you were lucky to have many nice wives but it was not fair and not normal. The man then had tears in his eyes and said he appreciated what I had told him. Then he left. I think there was another man, outside the lunch room door, in an army uniform, that he went away with.”

James: “That’s very interesting honey. I have a picture here.”

He shows Laura a picture of a man on his cell phone.

Laura: “Yes! That’s him.”

James: “Laura, this man is the elder son of the Chief of Staff of the People’s Liberation Army. This was a very important conversation he had with you.”

Laura: “Dad, was it OK for me to talk to him the way I did, telling him what you told us?”

James: “Yes honey. What you said to him was correct, and it was very important that you told the truth. I believe he understood you were telling the truth. What he did was very intelligent. He went to a child to find out what her father really thought about something very, very important. When he found his answer, he began to have hope – that maybe a terrible war could be avoided. That is why he had tears.”

Laura: “Is everything all right Dad?”

James: “I hope so. This little city we are living in is an experiment to see if people can live together peacefully and constructively. If we can, then there will be many more such cities. It is extremely important that this happens.”

Sky has come into the room unnoticed. She has heard the entire conversation. She too has tears of hope and

happiness. And now she knows – with absolute certainty – she has made some very good decisions. They all go off to dinner with the rest of the family.

Agreement with the Chinese, 2053

The US elite senses it will soon have to pursue operation CLEANSING. It is desired and expected that the ruling circles in China, India, and Russia will cooperate and likewise benefit from the new human order that will result. Therefore, meetings similar to this one with China will be held with India and Russia. The intent of these urgent meetings is to remove remaining uncertainty regarding what the various governments will do as the cleansing occurs. Chinese automation of the economy is almost as advanced as in the US and is almost as pervasive. The US elite still does not know how the Chinese leadership truly feels about the mass reduction of humans that the US will now precipitate. The Chinese, in particular, must be convinced that any notion of China dominating the world (because of its huge population) cannot happen – that, instead, the world's elites must establish genuine global peace and prosperity among themselves.

The strategic situation is clear. With the recent placement of very powerful and flexible laser weaponry into low earth orbit, the US is now in position to stop the launch of missiles, of any type, into space. China and Russia no longer have a viable nuclear retaliation option to whatever the US does. Similar to the meeting of US and Chinese elites held earlier this year, this one is held with the Chinese leadership in a secure compound outside Beijing.

Premiere: “We are aware of your intentions on this so called cleansing project. You put us in a very bad, a very dangerous position with this.”

President: “Yes, we know. That is why I’m here. We are now entering the period of time in which we will be forced to execute that operation. There still exists a small period where we might discuss details and coordination. But I must tell you we are serious about it; we have no intention of tolerating a general population which inherently is mentally unstable, unable to constructively participate in governance, and which is totally useless. Elimination of these is not negotiable. I’m afraid your elite, the Russian elite, and the Indian elite must accept that we will act and do so in the near future. However, there is the question of how we and you will interact. In that respect, we are willing to go to extremes to assure you we want your full and equal participation in the world that will emerge.”

Premiere: “I’m quite aware we have no nuclear retaliation option. I’m also aware we do not have the option of threatening you with a similar virus – certainly not in the short time frame that you state. Nor do we disagree with your analysis regarding the masses of mankind – our communist theology notwithstanding. We simply are not convinced that this will end well. We think it is a mistake.”

President: “I said we will go to extremes to resolve your concern. First, we’d like to deliver an important package of biologic materials and documentation to you. We will need your permission for a single US military cargo aircraft to deliver that to one of your military airports – whichever you choose. We expect, and want, your PLA defense aircraft to accompany this airplane once it reaches Chinese airspace. Your scientists should find the material very informative.

Vaccine included should be adequate for an initial several thousands of immunizations.”

Premiere: “You will also deliver such a package to the Indians and Russians?”

President: “Yes. As I think you know, I am meeting with the Indian and Russian Presidents in the next several days.” The US President continues.

President: “Second, for you to verify that the materials we are giving you are authentic, and are the ones to be used, we ask you to form a number of teams of medical doctors, nurses, and scientists to visit the US as soon as possible – even a few weeks from now. They need to develop a list, which you will keep secret from us, of hospitals in the US and nurses at those hospitals, which they intend to visit and extract serum samples. You will find that most medical persons in the US have been vaccinated as indicated in the delivered materials. Of course, you will examine the serums for any other and potentially abnormal material that could conceivably relate to the endeavor. This should convince you we have accurately described what we intend to do.”

Premiere: “Good. The purpose of what you just proposed is important.” The Premiere turns to an assistant and tells him to get his staff started on the necessary preparations for the specified visit.

President: “Third, we propose a gradual armed forces nullification process whereby opposing units of the world’s major military powers merge, combine and jointly control their weapon systems, cohabit (with their immediate families), and shift to a defensive stance to protect the regions in which they are located. This merging will provide joint protection of critical scarce resources throughout the planet, and will include joint stationing and merging of

forces at many, if not most, critical multi-local facilities such as ship building yards, aluminum smelting plants, ore mining and refining plants, space ports, and so on – on every continent. Of course the Indians and Russians are to be included in this merging.”

Premiere: “This notion that we might merge portions of our militaries has been communicated to us by a Professor Jian. The military chiefs of the military powers must meet to discuss how we can implement this.”

President: “I agree. Let’s set this in motion also.”

The president continues.

President: “Fourth, as the human population is clearly reduced to a small fraction of its previous size, we merge our much smaller, but far more capable and socially mature, populations. Here millions will move to and from our four nations – forming units of humanity that have as their best interest, the building of their mutual prosperity. Our people expect this will be very, very much like the past waves of immigration of Irish, Germans, Italians, Slavs, and Hispanics into the US – the major differences being the movement of people will be in both directions, and that the received populations will have a social and economic status fully equal to the already resident populations.”

Premiere: “This was suggested by one of your investors at a previous meeting. We think it is workable. We’ve paid attention to the significant immigration of Chinese and Indians to the US, both currently and in the past, and believe this sort of thing makes sense. It certainly makes it more difficult for governments to make war, when a significant portion of its population has the culture and biases of the population against which war is to be inflicted.”

President: “I think we now have sufficient agreement. We should be able to keep things under control as events progress.”

International Visit to US Biology, 2053

Ruling circles in the major nation states of the planet have been told of US plans to reduce the world population. These people need to know the details of how this ‘reduction’ is to be accomplished. Of particular concern is that the immunization formula to be given to them actually works and targets the actual virus to be used.

The world's best bioscientists have been invited to a secure meeting place at the science labs in Berkeley Hills, California. They have been shown both the lab facility and the associated computation facility. They are now seated with their hosts in a meeting room with a large projection screen. They are being shown biology cell structure and relevant DNA and RNA sequences.

Invited Scientist: “So this is it?”

US Scientist: “Yes, notice the long CRISPR keying sequences in both the cleansing virus and the immunization vaccine. These have been carefully designed, simulated, and tested to insure the virus and vaccine not only function as intended, but strongly resist unacceptable mutation. This pair is as safe as this kind of thing gets.”

The meeting ends. The scientists pack their bags with information – then head to their private jets for the trip home. Many more visits between these people will occur in the weeks and months ahead.

Most Programmers Obsolete, 2054

AI, computer programming, and computers have evolved over the past four decades to the point where the highly intricate code produced by well trained computer programmers is now mostly unnecessary. Yes – some computer work still does require such extreme expertise, but the application of computers to the vast panoply of commercial, manufacturing, security, bookkeeping, and data base processing now benefits from AI and good tools. Experts in the various occupations of mankind, untrained in code generation, now use ‘wizards,’ graphical layouts, and graphical symbols to organize processes and data processing into automated actions. AI translates the results of their work into executable and usable computer code. The hordes of highly paid and extremely competent coders using C, C+, Visual C#, Java, and dozens of other arcane programming languages are becoming obsolete.

This scene starts at the front door of TECH SOFT, a major source of computer applications located in Raleigh-Durham, North Carolina. There are dozens of self-driving vehicles parked and waiting in the street in front of the door. This is unusual. The computer programmers go in and up the elevators and stair cases. People are huddling in the aisles between the rows of desks. There are pink sheets on the chairs by most of the desks.

Andy: “How can this be? This is a strike out of the blue. I thought we computer programmers were in great demand.”

The pink sheets are addressed to the individual employees. They simply say the employee’s services are no longer required by TECH SOFT, and that their termination is

effective as of 8am this morning. Each terminated person is to empty their personal belongings into the small cart provided at each desk and leave their badge and other company security devices with the floor secretary. The employee can then take and keep the cart as they leave the building. The transportation vehicles outside are for their use. The pink sheet suggests using the government Transition Office regarding future employment opportunity.

Visit to the Transition Office, 2054

Harpal and Shalha Prakash, a married couple, had worked for TECH SOFT for nearly four years. They both have green cards and were on track for US citizenship. They bought an expensive home in the area and were planning to start a family. In fact, Shalha is pregnant. They visit the Transition Office in Raleigh-Durham, North Carolina.

The office manager comes up to the couple in the reception area. She asks them to follow her into her office and be seated.

Manager: “I see that you were both terminated at TECH SOFT about two months ago and have aggressively searched for new work – without results. We’ve had many hundreds of discharged TECH SOFT people visit here in that time period. Only two have found some kind of acceptable work. It doesn’t look promising for you. It may be returning to India is your best option.”

Harpal: “We purchased an expensive home in this city that cost us close to a million dollars. We put very little savings into our bank account, hoping to pay off the mortgage as quickly as possible. Since the layoffs began in Raleigh-Durham, there is a huge over supply of residences, and

housing prices have dropped by over one-half. That means we have virtually no savings, and the outstanding mortgage exceeds what we can sell the house for. We are broke, and if we sold the house, we would still owe the mortgage company about \$300,000. What do you suggest?"

Manager: "That complicates things. This is unusual. Usually when people with your background become unemployed, they go back to India with many hundreds of thousands of dollars, or even a million or more, in savings to take with them. I suggest seeing an attorney. Leaving while in debt might have consequences I am unaware of."

Harpal: "We've come here to work diligently for a good life, and this is what it comes to!"

He turns to his wife who is in a state of shock.

Harpal: "Let's go."

They get up and leave.

Stockpiling of Metals, Etc. 2054

Events are moving very fast. The number of employed has dropped precipitously, and that drop is accelerating – because most people have little money with which to buy things. Business profits are rapidly declining. The day of reckoning, when the beginning of general insurrection will force cleansing, is fast approaching. But automation of all necessary manufacturing needed by the network of new city states, the major component of the NWO, has not yet been completely accomplished. Of great concern is the automation of heavy industry such as steel making, aluminum making, of ship building, of aircraft fabrication, and the like. Also, much of this category of industry has shifted abroad – to China, to Brazil, to South Korea, and to

places far from the direct control of the US ruling elite. Something must be done to secure critical goods and materials for the city states in the aftermath of the cleansing which is now imminent.

Huge depots have been built which contain: aluminum ingots, rolls of steel sheet of various compositions and sizes, hundreds of millions of microprocessor integrated circuits (ICs) of various types, rolls of other electronic parts ready for automated insertion into the circuit cards composing the guts of the world's electronic devices, industrial chemicals (such as sulfuric acid and those forming plastic), and so much more. Investor 5 and his technicians are reviewing this state of affairs with the ARI research section responsible for collecting data and monitoring these stockpiles distributed among the city states.

Investor 5: “How long could industry in the city states function with what they've got stored?”

Supt.: “Six months for the items we are frantically still trying to store. Maybe two or more years for the heavy material, like rolls of steel and ingots of aluminum for the various industrial tubing and other extrusions.”

Investor 5: “When these deplete, what then?”

Supt.: “Recycling becomes the next source – but this technology is still being developed. We will get shortages requiring redesign of product and changes in manufacturing. And we become dependent on the Chinese and others for industrial material.”

Investor 5: “What about the thousands of parts we don't currently know we need for this automated industry we've only been operating for ten years or so?”

Supt.: “Anybody’s guess. But keep in mind, we’ve been telling our automation operators to store what they need like crazy. And we’ve advised the city states to fund them to do just that. It’s an unknown, because it’s so complicated, but they know the importance of it and have given it high priority. They’ve stored a lot of stuff we don’t track.”

Investor 5: “Hell. Like in every war we go into battle with what we’ve got, not with what we ideally want.”

Supt.: “Keep in mind, among those who are scheduled to be saved we’ve got lot’s of ‘em who know how to keep things running.”

Investor 5: “Yeah. We better not go overboard with this cleansing business. We’ve got to give priority to housing and feeding the Chosen.”

Choices Must be Made, 2054

A sermon takes place in the Episcopal Church in Boston, Massachusetts. Similar ones are taking place in the other major cities of Earth.

The plans for the Cleansing have been architected by the most active, yet highly secretive, echelon of the ruling class. Millions of immunizations have been delivered. The cleansing is imminent. The some ten thousand heads of families of the evident ruling class in the US have been informed they have choices yet to make, decisions to make that have existential consequences for themselves and for humanity. Most choices have already been made. But the remaining choices are now urgent, difficult to make, and may well affect the survival of mankind. Most of this audience do not attend church regularly, nor do they believe, and most habitually violate the ten commandments, some

literally every day. Their membership in the church and their presence today is mostly for show.

The reverend John Davies, in Sunday religious robe, takes the pulpit. He puts before him the sermon he intends to deliver. The audience, in the filled pews, in the overflow crowded to the walls astride the pews, and to the rear, becomes quiet and turns its attention to the front. He is about to speak.

Reverend John Davies: “This sermon, to this congregation, is about choice, about choices that must now be made in the very near future, choices about life, about death. I will not discuss particulars, this is not the place, nor time, nor my prerogative. But I beseech you to prepare yourself to make the very best choices possible. I present it to you as a prayer:

‘Dear God, even if only just this once, give me the strength to choose, not to indulge my prejudices, nor my fears, but for the survival of those that shall come after us. This time give me an honest, humble heart. A wrongness here is a sword thrust into the soul, into the future, of all mankind. May the children of these choices I hereby make be those who choose goodness over evil, life over death.

God, if there be a sliver of you in me, help me make these choices right, for if I do not, the wrath of nothingness will descend upon all of our kind, and this tiny part of the universe shall bear no further fruit, and shall be, as it once was, just dust and rock and horrible fire. Where there might have been flowers, laughing children, magnificent cities, and living things everlasting – there will be nothingness. Guide me, please, let me choose life. Amen.’“

THE CLEANSING 2054-55

An Incident in Orlando, June, 2054

The Governor of Florida calls the President of the United States.

Governor: “Mr. President, I’ve got some really bad news. Some ‘resistance cells,’ as I’ve heard your DHS people call them, have supplied communications gear, automatic weaponry, and significant amounts of ammunition to a number of employees at Disney World in Orlando. Several discharged army personnel are among these people, and they have taken several hundred vacationing families prisoner. They have positioned themselves in a number of the park facilities. I’m told our state militia cannot dislodge them without considerable bloodshed. Also, others in the general population are trying to join up with these people. We cannot control this situation. We need your help.”

President: “I’ve already been informed of this by my DCI. We’ve been expecting something like this. Someone from my office will be getting back to you.”

A Small Vial, June, 2054

Something is about to happen in the outskirts of Khartoum, Sudan. The deed described here should make any mortal being shudder with apprehension and shame. Warnings from the past presage what will be done here.

“Vengeance is mine, sayeth the Lord.”

“From a tiny seed, the great Oak grows.”

“Those who sow the wind shall reap the whirlwind.”

A disgruntled husband from a nearby town has been noticed by an informant in the pay of a nation state many thousands

of miles away. The husband would like to have revenge on the entire town. The informant reports, to the local agent of that nation state, that this man might be useful in some act of revenge. That foreign agent and the disgruntled man meet. The husband should have heeded the warning about vengeance. The agent should have heeded the parable of the oak seed. And the creators of the vial should have been restrained by the wisdom regarding the whirlwind.

Disgruntled husband: “I am told you also wish some kind of retribution on this village.”

Foreign agent: “Yes – the people in this village have disobeyed an instruction. We want them punished. I have here a very small vial of a substance that will make them sufficiently sick that they will be more obedient next time. Are you willing to drink from the village well? Then while you are doing so, do also break this fragile vial on the inside wall of the well, letting its contents fall into it. This would then also become your revenge.”

Disgruntled husband: “Yes, I shall be happy to do so. When do you desire this deed to be performed.”

Foreign agent: “On the forthcoming Holy Day.”

Disgruntled husband: “It shall be done!”

Sudan, a Deadly New Virus, July, 2054

Some unknown disease is causing massive death in the Sudanese countryside. There has been no warning. A small village in the distant outskirts of the capital city of Khartoum seems to have been struck first. A number of villagers, all using the same water well, became extremely sick within a day or two of one another. After onset of symptoms, all died within a week. Then family members,

and visitors to the village, became similarly sick within a week. The progression continued – with each passing week or so the number of infected equaled the number of those exposed to the previous victims. The death rate appears to be 100%. Contact with the known infected has ceased – no one will deal with a person known to be infected – on pain of certain death. The Sudanese government has, with European help, sent in a biologically protected team to examine victims and obtain samples of blood and other fluids. These have been sent, under strictest handling and security, to laboratories in Europe and the US. Additional cases are showing up in Khartoum and other nearby villages – apparently from personal but transient contact. The disease is expected to spread without limit.

Followup serum, saliva, and urine samples, collected from a wider area, have gone to the CDC and to the military bio labs in the US. They've also been delivered to Europe, China, India, and Russia. For each passing wave of new infections there will be about five times more victims than in the previous wave.

There are now many hundreds infected in the region around Khartoum. Dozens of infected must now also be in various places in the Middle-East, and likely around the planet. In Khartoum, with some one million people, it will take only about twelve weeks more for the entire city to be infected. This is only the beginning.

A Young Boy Dies, July, 2054

The virus is spreading. It knows not good from evil. It knows not the future, not of anyone, not of everyone. It does

not care. It is just an organized collection of proteins and other molecules designed for a simple purpose – to kill human beings. This is what it does to one such human, a ten year old boy living in the slums of one city of humans.

One week ago, a visitor from a village neighboring Khartoum picked up a date at the local market, held it in his left hand, sniffed it, then threw it back onto the basket of dates. Hours later a boy's father purchased the basket and took it home. Later, in the afternoon, the boy ate that date. A week later the boy has symptoms: he aches, his stomach hurts, he has a temperature. As the days go by it gets worse, he vomits and is dizzy. He cannot eat, and can barely drink water. His mother is hysterical. His parents can do nothing – they cannot afford a doctor who can perform serum and other tests – not that that would matter. Eventually, he becomes unconscious. His heart beat becomes irregular. By the week's end he is dead.

Had he lived and had he been able to go to school, a good school, and had he mentoring, of the kind that gave him the confidence to learn and to explore what kind of contributor to humankind he might become – he might have been a curer of disease, a researcher that discovered an important secret of human longevity, or a scientist that uncovered a mystery of the universe, or a great teacher – one who showed others how to constructively share power. But now there is nothing. Promise has been transformed into pain and grief, and then nothingness. And this loss of one, is not just the loss of one. In the next several years, it will become the extinction of more than eight billion others – others who shared 99.99% of his genetic material – and the gift of life. The stars and the galaxies should weep, but they cannot and

do not. Nor do those who, in their infinite arrogance and contempt, have deliberately set this plague upon the planet.

CIA Verifies Virus, July, 2054

There is no question but that the disgruntled husband did the deed. Examination by the CIA of the fluid samples show the disease agents are those issued by the operative. Operation Cleansing is now under way and is unstoppable. Except for a tiny minority of elites who were educated in the West or China, else trusted by foreign intelligence agencies, the native occupants of Africa are doomed, as are those of the Arab countries, Tibet, Bangladesh, Afghanistan, most of South and Central America, the Philippines, Malaysia, Indonesia, the islands of the Pacific Ocean, and more.

It is questionable how many Russians and Chinese have been immunized. The old order of mankind is doomed. Many extensive networks of CIA agents around the world will cease, in a few months, to exist. The criminal syndicates, often instigated by the CIA, are deliberately being destroyed – they being far too dangerous to let exist.

Biologists, the world over, including the US, fear evolution of the infectious agent into something that has no immunization. This as scavenger microorganisms and animals feast upon the incredibly vast human carnage that is certain to manifest. No one can demonstrate that no mutant of the death agent might come about for which humanity has no antidote and no immunization. It was a terrible risk that the US ruling class was willing to take to be rid of the lower classes they feared and despised.

Nor is it assured that economic functioning will continue in a satisfactory way. Stock piles have been built of: food stuffs, metals, concrete, plastics feed stocks, petroleum, critical manufactured components such as semiconductors, lasers, aircraft components, medical instruments, vehicles, and other goods identified by AI simulations as crucially important. But what will happen when those are depleted?

It will be decades before any permanent stability can be reliably demonstrated. The one good that seems apparent is that the notably intelligent survivors are now in a situation where their individual survival depends highly on cooperating with other human survivors around the planet who were presumably selected for their rational, if not altruistic, inclinations.

Jeff is Betrayed – Again, July, 2054

It is mid-afternoon. Jeff and Lisa are walking home from the Logan Square subway station. A meticulously clean and polished, black limousine pulls up next to the sidewalk where they are walking. A passenger window opens. Lisa recognizes the face of the occupant as her father. Jeff recognizes him as Donald Sturka, the owner of the property he is renting. We know him as Investor 4, the co-instigator of ARI. He calls out to Lisa:

Sturka: “Lisa, you and Jeff get in. We need to talk.”

Lisa: “Jeff, we need to get in. I’ll explain later.”

Jeff is perplexed, but he trusts her. They get into the limousine.

Lisa: “Hi Dad. Meet Jeff.”

Jeff and her father reach across Lisa to one another and shake hands.

Lisa: “Dad. Let me do the talking here.”

Lisa continues.

Lisa: “Jeff. Let me start by telling you I knew what was going to happen about this time. And a great deal is now going to happen in Chicago, and on planet Earth. The ‘cleansing’ you feared is imminent.”

Jeff is shocked. There is a pause. Jeff is trying to understand the implications of what was just said. Lisa continues:

Lisa: “Norm is an agent of the FBI and was my personal bodyguard since just before you and I met. When Sky divorced you, Homeland Security saw an opportunity – for an especially talented but unfortunate engineer to become the seed for an insurgency which would be genuine, the best that could be mustered, and yet under their direct observation. You did not disappoint. Your architecture was brilliant and matched what our AI found optimal. Your strategic and tactical choices were intelligent. You proceeded with courage. You retained your sense of humanity in minimizing violence both to those attempting insurrection and the policing forces directed against them. Jeff, you are a magnificent man and fully worthy to be among the Chosen. I’m carrying your baby. I love you and wanted to have it. There is nothing you nor anyone else could have done to change the outcome for humanity, which will soon be evident. My dad was among the several others at the top of the ruling class that wanted a different resolution to the predicament industrial automation presented to humanity. But the terrible truth is that this outcome was logically predictable when the majority of mankind failed to organize peacefully, yet effectively, to build a world-wide democracy. There was nothing the ruling class could have done to inhibit the creation of such in the

early 2000's when the predicament produced by automation was clearly evident. That majority didn't, and that failure sealed their fate."

Jeff lowers his head. He is in tears as is Lisa. Her dad is struggling to hold back his. There is a significant pause.

Donald: "Jeff. Do you understand, do you fully understand what Lisa just said?"

Jeff: "Yes, I'm afraid I do. What now?"

Donald: "Well, about now the police are raiding the bungalow you rented. This is mostly for show because the virus will soon enter this neighborhood. But your personal belongings will be collected and delivered to us. You need to be vaccinated – which my personal nurse will do as we arrive in our residence in the new city state. Lisa will take you around our facilities and the public institutions of the city state. This includes, by the way, the new form of governance which is a genuine democracy. In a few days my director of technology will give you a tour of the city's research and engineering facilities. If you are willing to help, we will find you some interesting projects to join."

The limousine heads to one of the entrances to the Chicago City State – about a mile away.

China Reacts, July, 2054

The material from the Sudanese victims is quickly analyzed by Chinese biology labs. Detectable agents in the collected material agree with the substances delivered by the US to China the previous year. Furthermore, the biologic agents obtained from the US in 2053 had been extensively tested and their terrible potency verified. The time from exposure to the agent to clinically observable symptoms is usually

one week. The disease is infectious starting several days before symptoms appear. The time to death, after symptoms are evident, is less than one week.

The Chinese consider the etiology of the disease from the point of view of their national interest. The immunization provided by the US works well – apparently 99.9 percent of the time or better. It must be given at least two weeks before exposure to the lethal agent. Chinese vaccine manufacturing institutions are able to manufacture the vaccine and are currently capable of providing several hundred thousand doses per week. As of the day the samples from Sudan are analyzed, they begin doing so. The various branches of the PLA are given priority. The PLA is demanding that production be quickly increased to three million doses per week in three months or less. Doses are delivered to critically positioned Chinese abroad. These deliveries are protected by security contingents whose personnel are immunized. Industrially and militarily important parts of China are sealed-off from all travel – until desired immunization levels are achieved. No antidote is currently available for those infected, but research in that area continues. The Chinese are shocked to realize the ruling classes in the US were sufficiently irrational to do this! Yet, there is nothing to be done except to protect as many people as possible from the consequences.

This implies, in part, that the Chinese provide immunizations to principals in areas of the world of importance to their national security. These are officials, technicians, and military persons in Iran, parts of Africa, Cuba, and several regimes in the Middle East.

Russia Reacts, July, 2054

The Russian reaction is quick – especially at the special biological facilities East of the Ural mountains.

Vaccine manufacturing was given priority in 2045 following the US space lift of directed energy beam weaponry to NEO (near earth orbit). The capacity, however, is limited to some several tens of thousands of doses per week. Arrangements are made with the Chinese to provide additional doses in return for certain kinds of directed energy technology.

A year ago, Russians were asked by the US to deal with their criminal networks. The Russian authorities now realize that the immunization program, having immunized only some several tens of thousands, will be hijacked by those criminal elements if the networks are not immediately destroyed. The military and FSB are now given free hand to apprehend and eliminate all elements of those networks. Any corruption of that effort will be met by firing squad. Similar to the actions of the Chinese, the Russians isolate regions by travel restriction. Russia is basically in militarily enforced lock-down until immunization of its most valued citizens is substantially complete.

Europe Reacts, July, 2054

Europeans – particularly Germans, the Scandinavians, the English, the French, the Spanish, and the Italians – proceed with their plans for handling extreme pandemics. Their militaries and police are adequate to enforce civil order. Their degree of industrial automation is quite high. Their industrial regions have resembled the new US city states for decades.

The governments go into action. Vaccine is obtained from the US, then quickly produced by several of the European pharmaceutical giants. The major countries quickly vaccinate their governing classes, the top echelons of their militaries, and their principle industrial persons and families. They have no inoculation plans for, nor do they intend to so favor, their large immigrant populations, gypsies, and (other than the young, attractive female members) the citizenry of the Eastern block regions. The trouble spots of the Middle East (after decades of violence, which continues still) – are beyond consideration. From the view of the European aristocracy, they are best allowed to vanish.

Spreads: Africa, Middle-East, August, 2054

The public, world-wide, knows that a vicious new disease has originated in Sudan and has spread to the various nation-states of the Middle East and the Northern states of the African continent. It has been nearly two months since the initial reported deaths near Khartoum. There are tens of thousands dead, many tens of thousands known infected, and it is known that many new victims are being identified as far away as Afghanistan, Jordan, Iraq, Libya, Zimbabwe, Kenya, and several in Europe, India, and in the Americas. The ability of local and international public health organizations to isolate and control the disease is now overwhelmed. Each additional infection cycle will now increase the number of newly infected by roughly five times. Authorities realize the disease is now uncontrollable.

Blood samples continue be taken at a huge number of sites around the world and delivered to the major disease control

centers – in order to track the progression of the disease and to monitor for dangerous mutations. No identification of the infectious agent has been announced to the general public, but it is becoming widely known that the mortality rate is one-hundred percent. The public is becoming aware of impending disaster, and that it will be world-wide.

Criminal Gangs Destroyed, August, 2054

Gangster networks, worldwide, have existed because ruling elites have found them useful for intimidating populations and doing other “dirty work.” Gangsters in the US have been accommodated by the US government, and the US had actually spawned or promoted most gangster networks in both Soviet and post-Soviet Russia and Eastern Europe. In the New World Order, they will be useless and dangerous. Right now, they must be prevented from gaining immunization from the spreading disease. They must be eliminated immediately and in their entirety.

The world in 2054 is well surveilled. Most every lower class person in the developed world is being tracked virtually all of the time. Interaction between persons of interest is continually monitored by the NSA, FBI, and the related organizations of other nations. The intelligence agencies of the US, Russia, and Israel, for instance, track each others illicit (i.e. gangster) organizations independently. These foreign agencies are, therefore, often able to discern gangster penetration of their partner national intelligence agencies – thus permitting easy identification, apprehension, and elimination of such ‘moles’ as they are called.

By late Summer, 2054, such international cooperation has expedited this process, and has been quite effective. Essentially, no gangster network has been able to bypass police scrutiny and obtain immunization doses. Apart from doctors and nurses incidentally associated with them, none are immunized and they will soon expire.

Some of the 99% Retaliate, Sept. 2054

Those in the network of sex traffickers who kidnap and obtain women, from all parts of the world, for use by the uber rich of Wall Street, realize they are being denied the immunizations that would prevent their deaths as the plague penetrates the NYC downtown area. They want revenge. And they think that blood serum, of Wall Street ‘regulars,’ just might confer, if injected into their own veins, some immunity.

The hotel they operate, between Wall Street and Battery Park, is ‘dark,’ meaning that the usual, ubiquitous surveillance devices that exist almost everywhere – are absent here. This is so there is no record of what clientele visit here and what they do here. However, the Secret Service of the US government does provide a very small security contingent to ensure the patrons are secure in their persons. That contingent could, if alerted to some emergency in the hotel, quickly request help.

Today is the day of action. It is a Friday and the ‘regulars’ will show up in the largest numbers of the week. At 3pm, New York time, they will start coming in.

Nothing much happens at this hotel – except for the basic business, which is always prearranged and surreptitiously

paid for outside the hotel. The security contingent is in fact one hired guard who is ex-military and who occasionally walks the halls and sometimes circles the outside of the building and takes a look through the windows. At 2:30pm a young woman visits him. She is one of the workers at the hotel. By plan, she has done this several times in the recent past. So it is known he will be distracted for some time. By 3pm, a number of extra male ‘attendants’ (traffickers, actually) have entered the hotel through the employee entrance. They take up positions in the hotel apartments – in closets, in hidden adjacent rooms.

After 3pm the regulars start meandering in. This scene takes a look at just one of them as he goes about his usual visit.

He knocks at the door – expecting his companion to open it and greet him. She does so. She goes by the name Elena.

Elena: “Joe, I see?”

Joe: “Yes.”

Elena: “Come on in! Make yourself comfortable. I’ll get ready.”

He does so. He heads to the bed, pulls back the sheets, and gets undressed. She comes out of the bath, sits next to him, and begins her work.

Elena: “How shall we do this today?”

At this moment two men with pistols rush in and confront them. Elena, or whatever is her real name, quickly grabs her clothes, goes to an adjacent room, dresses, and waits.

Trafficker 1: “Get your fat ass off that bed. Stand up. Turn around. Put your hands behind your back.”

Joe: “Who do you think you’re talking to!”

Trafficker 1 points the gun, at about 3 foot distance, to his chest. The gun has a large silencer on it. A firing would make just a small pop.

Trafficker 1: “I don’t give a damn! Get up! Now!”

The slob does so, turns around, and puts his hands at his back. Trafficker 2 puts standard NYC police handcuffs on him, stuffs a rag into his mouth, and gags him with a short piece of rope. He is led to the bathroom shower, one with a bathtub.

Trafficker 1: “Get in and face the wall.”

He does so. Trafficker 2 takes a very long, thin belt out of his bag, wraps it around the slob’s waist several times, loops it around his neck once, loops it again around his waist, then ties it securely and fast around the sturdy hand pull at the inside of the tub wall. He then puts another pair of handcuffs around the ugly, shaved headed, slob’s ankles. Finally he puts a strong rope around the foot handcuffs, then pulls the slob off his feet, rotating his body, and tying the rope and feet to the shower head pipe. It is secured with duct tape. It won’t get loose. The slob’s head is now at the bottom of the tub. Trafficker 2 stops the drain on the tub, turns on the shower, and closes the curtain to keep water from getting on the floor. They wait. The water rises. The slob moans and wiggles. But there is nothing he can do. The moans turn to gurgles.

Trafficker 2: “This is too easy for this evil rat. I’d like to see a red hot poker jabbed up his ass for every trafficked woman he’s assaulted. I’d like his evil tongue bit by a rattlesnake for every lie he’s told to an honest person he’s cheated. I’d like to slice part of each eye out for every family he’s condemned to poverty. I wish there really was a Hell for this ugly bastard to burn in for all of eternity.”

Trafficker 1: “I agree. It’s 3:25pm. At 4pm the first van at the employee entrance will pick us and Elena up to get out of here.”

They turn the shower off. The gurgling has stopped. The carcass is limp. Trafficker 2 draws several ounces of venous blood from one of the slob’s arms and places the canister into a sterile, iced container. They fetch Elena and wait until it is time to go to the employee waiting area.

Something like this happens to about thirty VIPs before the traffickers and workers leave the hotel for good. By 4:30pm, the young woman entertaining the hired guard leaves. The guard takes a walk on the hotel floors. He sees pieces of tape and plastic and scuff marks on the corridor floors. Something is wrong. The feeling of disaster overwhelms him. He hits the panic button. Before the evening is finished several dozen bankers, traders, freelance investors, and a few politicians will be hauled off to the NYC morgue.

Andy Tells Anna About the Police, Oct. 2054

Andy and Anna are having dinner in a quiet, secure restaurant near their home in Arlington, Virginia.

Andy: “I heard some really sad news today. Police departments, around the country, are being decimated – and their families as well. The virus is hitting them before hitting the populations in which they are immersed, which is very strange.”

Anna: “How can that be? We would expect they would have picked it up from people having visited infected foreign places, or their relatives. Those non-police persons should have perished first. And most law enforcement people were supposedly vaccinated.”

Andy: “I checked with my Dad. He thinks it is deliberate. He says birth control pills issued to the various departments were deliberately contaminated. And you and I know that some vaccinations are phony – given only to assure the recipients they have been protected.”

Andy pauses.

Andy: “Dad and I think the police in the areas where the 99% live are now considered dangerous to us. Now that infection of the US general population is progressing in earnest, these police, who were set loose to intimidate that population, are no longer needed. If allowed to survive, they would likely want entry into the city states. And they just might organize themselves to displace us. That can’t be allowed. But when I think of my old friends of several decades ago, I can see that most of them did not deserve this fate.”

Anna: “I feel sad too. But there is nothing we can do.”

Chicago Parks – Funeral Pyres, Nov. 2054

Way back in the 1930’s, in Chicago, Illinois, Franklin D. Roosevelt’s New Deal sponsored construction of a vast number of elementary schools, high schools, neighborhood libraries, and, above all, city parks. Here, in 2054, as the disease spread to the unvaccinated inhabitants of Chicago, the parks became the places to where the new infantry of the military, the robotic metal cats, would drag the dead victims. These they found in the two flats, apartment houses, and single family residences surrounding the central city core of high rise skyscrapers.

By day and by night, the gruesome spectacle continued – of limber, metal cats pulling corpses out of residences, along

sidewalks, and along the middle of streets, toward these parks. When the piles grew sufficiently wide, deep and high – diesel oil or gasoline was sprayed on them. When lit, and when it became dark, the bonfires sent out into the sky the grim evidence of a massive extermination of a supposedly inferior humanity. The death shops of Treblinka, Auschwitz, Buchenwald, and other concentration camps of the world war two Nazi, were but a tiny example of what was to come more than a century later. It would be many months, of dozens of such pyres burning each night, before the cleansing objective in Chicago was achieved.

Six Months, December, 2054

Nearly a billion persons are infected or deceased worldwide, but the greatest concentration is in the Middle East and Africa. Disease control centers believe they have identified the infectious agent and its DNA. But no known cure exists. Burial of the dead has become inadequate. Something has to be done with the corpses which are becoming, through animal scavenging, a conceivable source of mutated pathogens that could threaten the Chosen, the immunized humans.

The US has many hundreds of military bases throughout the world and dozens in the Middle East and North Africa. These bases mostly consist of highly automated teams of robotic fighting cats and support vehicles. The teams work in unison with drone aircraft piloted from AI command sites located redundantly around the planet. These are now being programmed and operated to collect disease victims in the more remote parts of the world.

All towns, villages, and neighborhoods – throughout recently infected areas – are inspected. Where corpses are detected, the titanium-silicon cats and their support vehicles are sent in. The cats search all dwellings and public places. Bodies are loaded onto the support vehicles and clamped into place. The vehicles self-drive to predetermined locations (on highways, on public squares), then stack their lifeless cargo onto those spots. As in Chicago, giant pyres are built – some fifteen meters by fifteen meters square and four or five meters high. They typically contain several thousand corpses each. Number two diesel fuel, or some other flammable, is sprayed on the pile. It is set afire. In twenty four hours there is but a few hundred kilos of ash which is quickly shoveled up and dumped into excavated holes in the ground. Each day, and each night, the tireless military cats keep busy, keep moving to new areas, areas with either previously undiscovered or freshly created corpses.

Before the year is done, on planet Earth, some three million pyres will have lit the night sky. From space these look like patches of tiny lit candles on the darkened side of a giant, spherical Christmas ornament.

The Real Second Coming, Feb. 2055

A metal cat, the size of a lion, is waiting in the back of a church parking lot, along with its robotic support vehicle and an empty transport vehicle – also self-driven. A US ARMY insignia is painted on the supporting vehicles. It is Sunday, and the congregation of the Cult of the Second Coming, in Kansas City, Missouri, is meeting for a sermon and prayers.

Pastor: “O woe is us. Woe is us!”

Members have died. The pastor’s son and daughter succumbed but a few days previous. Many sitting today in the congregation are sick. Those who are not, are obviously exposed to the sickness. This building will be empty by next Sunday, and by the Sunday after – the cat’s squadron will be assigned to another location to perform the same duty.

Supplicant: “Help us God. Please help us pitiful sinners.”

Were there a God of the sort these people imagine, he might have responded:

God: “I give life to those who deserve it, not to fools, not to the inferior, and only to those who use the intellect, courage, and competence that my cruel but effective evolution driven process creates. You indeed have sinned. But you do not even know how you have sinned. Your opportunity to know the truth has passed – the second coming you expected was never anything but the opportunity to rationally reason and to accept your responsibilities to govern. But you did not.”

Bulldozers and Dismantling, April, 2055

The areas upon which the first city states were built had, of course, to be cleared for their construction. But after the great cleansing, thousands of mid-sized cities, towns, and uncleared areas of large metropolitan areas remained. These were devoid of human life and initially left to degrade and rust and otherwise decay. They need to be dismantled, or at least put into a state of safe stability.

These vast areas – mostly huts of the serfs, built with inferior wood and ‘light construction’ – now contain: rotted wood and dirty fiberglass insulation, cracked asphalt

shingles, peeling paint, broken bricks, concrete fragments, dangerous black fungus, pools of undrinkable scummy water, dangerous industrial chemicals, asbestos fibers, hormones that make mammal males infertile, and more of the like.

Also sitting upon the land: schools which taught subservience to children who are no more, trailer camps for the lowest of the low, and the ostentatious stores and malls where pitiful wages were exchanged for the cheapest of both necessities and tasteless junk. The buildings were mostly made of the cheapest construction – suitable for temporary use only – which in retrospect was wise.

Some of these frail accouterments of the inferior deceased (mobile homes and cheap residences are examples) wait silently – for high winds or the occasional tornado to tear them off their puny supports and throw them up into the sky, then crash them down.

Garbage dumps – accumulated over some ten decades – contain mountains of plastic junk which should never have been made, nor advertised, nor sold, nor misused, nor dumped onto good land nor the oceans.

All these are insults to the planet and are intolerable to the Chosen. Automation is given the job, which will take many years, to sort this stuff out, recover what can be, and to reduce the remainder to what nature can reuse.

The Superintendent overseeing clean-up in the broader area surrounding the Chicago City State is visited by Investor 5. They are touring the area to the West and South of that current city state.

Investor 5: “Tell me what your automated clean-up tools are doing.”

Supt.: “They are cleaning up the area so the city state can begin construction of new sections of high-rise residences, research institutes, and automated factories. It will take years to do this. For now, we are concentrating on removing the single family residences that cover square miles of Chicago’s old Southwest side. Crews, partly human, go in and check that there is no residual gas, used back then for heating, to catch fire. When clear, the bulldozers go in and tear the structures down. They segregate the major pieces into piles – for instance the roof material in one pile, the exterior walls in another, structural beams in another still, and so on. Specialized robots go in and hammer and saw and pull apart material which then goes into further piles for removal and delivery to temporary storage sites for future use or destruction. Wood can sometimes be reused, asphalt shingles contain heavy oils, copper wiring is taken to our factories, and so on.”

Investor 5: “Do you need anything you don’t have?”

Supt.: “No. This job is boring, but it needs to be done and we have what we need. We recover quite a bit of useful material, especially reusable metal and wood. Had we more automated machinery, we could proceed faster.”

Investor 5: “Thanks for the tour. Even though it’s boring, keep it up. We’ve got plans for this area. Our population continues to grow.”

THE NEW WORLD ORDER

Lincoln Memorial, NWO begins, 2056

Those who were teenagers during the Cleansing are now becoming of age. The first of them are graduating from the formal system of higher schools. By contrast, the major instigators of the Cleansing are anticipating the time when they will be 'old in tooth' as the saying goes, feeble in mind, less inclined to action, and of less courage. It is time to let the first generation of the new human order know that it must accept responsibility and take command. This constitutes a sea change in governance. The ultimate power to govern will hereby be transferred from a motley collection of business, investor, and military types, who number in the mere thousands – to a world-wide population of perhaps 70 million persons – the full set of survivors of the cleansing. A speech is about to be given by one of the principals of that Cleansing, and it is being delivered at the Lincoln Memorial in Washington, DC.

James Larkensen: You know him as Investor 5.

“I speak today to you, the oncoming generation of people of Earth, of your responsibilities and your duty to yourselves and all future human generations.

You were sired by two distinct, but compatible and mutually supportive, populations. The first were those, like myself, who had the temerity to climb and fight our way to the top of wealth, political power, and exceptional privilege. World-wide there were, and are, some tens of thousands of us. The second category were those of exceptional technical, administrative, and scholarly talent. We two types engineered the transition from pre-technology humanity to the now highly technological, and highly automated,

civilization that lie about us and which will be perfected, by you, much further in the centuries ahead.

Some of you were born from the harems of the wealthy and highly positioned in society. Privileged males usually had a dozen or so very beautiful and talented ladies who bore them children. Typically, each such lady gave birth to several of you. All total, about one million of you have this parentage. The remainder of you come, mostly, from what past humans called a 'normal family' with one husband and nominally one wife. But these were very exceptional people. They were selected, by the privileged, on the basis of their great intelligence, their significant productions to the well being of mankind, their honesty and integrity, and thus their desirability for inclusion into the future body of mankind.

You are the direct descendants of this powerful, beautiful, intelligent, and most capable of people. You must never, ever forget this.

And why the Cleansing – of the removal of the 99%? I will speak very little of it – except it was necessary. Those beings were easily manipulated, were of feeble minds, believed in ridiculous superstitions, rejected science, and were totally focused on their individual pleasure and convenience. They were becoming an impossible burden on the planet, and at the very same time were becoming both useless and an unacceptable threat to necessary law and order. Concern yourself not that they no longer exist, but rather that if they did still exist, you and a favorable future for humanity would not!

Now perk your ears up! Governance – by hidden counsel, through back-door dealings, through mass media

propaganda, through rigged elections, by dishonest politicians, and through artificially manufactured crises – ceased with the Cleansing.

Although humanity has, since then, been organized into small governing units of people who reside or work nearby one another – and who issue policy directives addressed to those who govern – ultimate governing power has remained with those of us having great wealth or other high position.

Thus, a further great change in governance will now be established, and you are charged with instituting that change and making it permanent.

As you know, and have participated in, the governing neighborhood units meet regularly, determine what public matters require attention and study, find solutions to all issues of public importance, and network with other such governing units using statistical techniques. When a consensus level of neighborhoods find agreement on an issue-solution pair, they issue a Policy Directive which is binding, pending only our approval, upon their representatives in government. Ultimately, this semi-democratic process has sought to create and manage all the larger institutions and organizations of mankind.

That continues, but now your control is total! We no longer mark your papers and score your test grades in the school of democracy. Any mistakes you now make will be graded by the viper of reality. The Policy Directives you now create will not be approved by, and thus not filtered by, us. Now they will become direct commands to those who must obey you. You, not we, are now responsible for the outcomes. Be very careful what you command!

Another matter. Your personal affairs. You are the freest generation of mankind that has ever existed. Your everyday needs for shelter, food, medicine, communication, transport, and most everything else of a material nature, are provided by automated means. Your choices of what you might do are limited primarily by the restriction that: 'your rights end where the other person's rights begin.' In practice, you are limited by your ability to cooperate with one another to accomplish what you and those others need or want. If you want to set up shop on the moon, and so do a consensus number of others – go do it! On the matter of relationships, including sex – you are free – just remember 'your rights end where those of other persons begin.' You may form normal families as you wish. Or, if an exceptional male has attracted ten female partners – that's their business, their choice. But if you are wise, you will allow no coercion – not physical, nor by intrigue, nor by other unfair manipulation.

Do join others of yourselves in enterprises that excite you and which arouse, and continue to arouse, your passions. Our ability to build – to discover and to engineer – keeps growing. The military armaments industry, so necessary in even the recent past, is now being turned into the capability to make ships for travel to the planets and the stars – and for building the most magnificent cities and constructions here on Earth. Work out, with others of your kind, which enterprises to address and in what order.

You are the first truly free generation. But never, ever, ever forget that the price of freedom, the price of your existence, of that of your children – is eternal vigilance! You of the future – we of the past salute you, and wish you well!"

City State Security, 2056

The police function has been communitized in the NWO. Technology is being used to warn and enable individuals and groups of citizens to protect themselves. Private data is restricted in how it can be accessed by policing institutions and nearby bystanders, but can easily be made available to trusted friends.

Profile of Crimes

Crime is considerably less than in the 99% days. Theft of money, public property, and personal property is now rare.

But crimes of passion are, by far, the great proportion of serious events. During the cleansing, the ugly beasts of Wall Street, the crooked politicians, and the heads of dishonest businesses, arranged the survival of themselves and their offspring. Those freakish males (they are mostly males) do not thrive in the new environment where women have the freedom to make their own intimacy and reproductive choices. Virtually always, when one of these approaches a beautiful, competent woman, he is rudely told to go masturbate, or better yet, to go jump off a bridge. They are pissed. Only the women of their own kind are available to them. Yet they are persistent in wanting what they should not have. The line delineating the limits of legitimate behavior is often crossed. They often hold grudges and attempt rape.

Also, organized criminality remains a threat. The motivation is the same – the male sex drive. But the effort is organized and magnified and often far more sophisticated: the capture and trafficking of women. Even more insidious are the

attempts to destroy democracy and establish an aristocracy that controls everything – and thus allow an elite (of males, of course) to enslave the citizenry, then sequester whichever females they desire for themselves.

Personal and Residential Security

Security of persons and property starts with people and residences properly instrumented: cameras, audio recorders, movement trackers, chemical sensors, even microorganism detectors. These are on one's person or in one's residence, place of work, or temporarily assigned to one's self while in a transit vehicle. The purpose is to keep a record of personal movement and events, a record that might be of use in getting help if needed, and to provide critical information in case of actual trouble. It is data that should, normally, be erased after a period of time long enough to ensure it will not be needed in the near future.

To ensure recorded data is not lost due to deliberate attack or storage equipment failure, it may be transmitted, real time, to a trusted backup – such as the storage devices of a reliable friend. The data is highly detailed – the recent past can reliably be reconstructed from it – so long as the data exists.

It can be locked and delivered to other entities – such as the safety police and courts – but only under carefully proscribed circumstances agreed upon by the citizenry. This data should not ever be a tool of tyranny.

James Larkensen, or Investor 5 as we knew him before, has asked for a tour of the policing facilities and discussion of police methodology in the Chicago City State. He is an

honored guest and is given a tour by Rick Stuben who is now Chief of Police in that city state.

Larkensen: “What if I feel I’m in danger. What if there is a person or group that wants revenge, or seeks to silence me? What protection do I have?”

Stuben: “First, your residence is tight. There are: cameras, microphones, motion detectors, window latches and detectors, door alarms, and locks with access codes and identities of persons who can legitimately unlock them. AI, in your residence, creates ‘event data sets’ for possible future examination.”

Larkensen: “Doesn’t this violate privacy?”

Stuben: “No. Unless and until a ‘save scene’ event is declared, the local data storage can only be sent to trusted friends. It is not available to the police or other parties – unless and until some emergency state is declared.”

Larkensen: “Sent you say? You, the authorities, and possibly others, could intercept such messages?”

Stuben: “No. The ‘Dumb Network’ – which is used, publicly monitored, and regularly tested for its integrity – knows nothing about the content. And the communications equipment normally makes ‘phantom’ calls, including misleading data, to confuse potential snoopers. This thus masks any real communications traffic. Monitoring the origin, time, and destination of packets reveals very little about any communication.”

Larkensen: “What happens when a criminal event occurs?”

Stuben: “Local context processing programs detect, or a person detects, a possible police event. All recent and forthcoming data is locked. That means it cannot be erased except by Court order or by the implied victim – and then

only so at a reasonable later time. Keep in mind, locked data is not automatically available to us, the police. Non-emergency access requires both a court order AND the presence of friends of any victim or the victim. Emergency access means the safety of persons requires that access. If we grab that data but have insufficient reason to believe that persons are in immediate danger, we will be under public scrutiny and can be punished.”

Larkensen: “I want to shift focus. What about security without loss of privacy when a person is on the move?”

Stuben: “It’s similar. The person wears her identification necklace or arm bracelet or belt. These have cameras, mikes, and data storage to record the nearby environment of people, places, and vehicles. As the person moves about, she encounters public Dumb Network microcells. Her bracelet sends whatever data is stored to her residence and friends for storage and processing. Any alarms and warnings generated by processing on the data are sent back to her. Again it’s all private.”

Larkensen: “Are institutions handled like residences?”

Stuben: “Yes – with an exception. A publicly visible algorithm separates personal-private data from the institutionally pertinent content – to ensure personal privacy and institutional integrity.”

Larkensen: “How about apprehension? How is interdiction conducted to stop a crime, or at least to apprehend the perpetrator?”

Stuben: “Once criminal action is detected, it is declared. Bystanders and police are notified. Vehicles are stopped. Gates are closed. The crime area is isolated and culprits are apprehended by the human police.”

Larkensen: “What ‘weak spots’ exist in the system? Or do you claim it is perfect?”

Stuben: “We publish reports of those incidents in which the system has failed in some way. These usually become issues for the democratic network of neighborhoods to consider. They are acted upon. The biggest problem is simply human imagination – persons with dishonest intentions, yet knowledgeable about the system, can sometimes figure out a way to commit a crime and get away with it. It is rare, but does happen.”

Stuben: “Without the Dumb Network, privacy of residential and personal information cannot be assured. In the old USA, the corporate types running the old internet, and the NSA, would collect, store, and process the contents of every packet. Privacy? You might as well have put a microphone and selfie camera on everyone and at all times – connected straight to the NSA and the rest of the policing institutions of the old ruling class.”

Laws, Democracy at Work, 2056

In the New World Order, the number of laws is minimal. Administration, including policing and adjudication of laws, is much reduced. There is a universal ‘single payer’ medical system. A Universal Basic Income, rights to an education, and other basic economic rights make death insurance unnecessary. Thus there are few insurance claims to contest. In the past, insurance litigation produced about 50% of the judicial system workload. Now, the biggest source of strife is person to person relationships. As already said, the large number of rejected males appears to be the cause.

Policy creation, to resolve conflict, is now done at the community, the democracy level. Here is a little insight as to how the making of policy works.

One of the Northern California City State neighborhood units considers several new laws concerning female to male relationships.

Moderator: “The first priority issue you collectively determined for this month has two parts (1) what last name should be assigned to a newborn, and (2) should the husband of a woman giving birth be informed as to whether he is the birth father of the child?”

Sheila: “I agree that there is an issue here. In the past, and sometimes still, the family name assigned to a newborn by most institutions is the family name of the father. This is sexist. Let’s pass a law giving the birth mother the right to choose any name that does not infringe a third party name. Also, I don’t think the institution where the birth took place should have to identify (by DNA analysis presumably) whether a husband is the birth father.”

Lisa: “What if the father is both the married partner of the woman and the child’s DNA shows he is the biological father. Does he not have a say? The proposed solution is as sexist as the current naming convention.”

Hector: “I see how the two parts of this issue are really entwined. You can’t really determine if the husband should have a say in the name unless he is identified as the real father.”

David: “Good observation. Why not code the law to say that a married couple may give a biologically shared newborn any legal name as the couple chooses, but otherwise the mother may choose any legal name. It is clear that a DNA

matching, or some other method, would be required to determine whether a husband is the father.”

The meeting moderator conducts a hands vote on this last proposal. The vast majority of participants hold their hands up. It is agreed upon.

Moderator: “Do I have at least two Work Group volunteers to write up a policy proposal on this? The proposal must be suitable for submission to a small, random subset of neighborhoods for an initial test of public sentiment.”
Three hands go up. They will put together a *Policy Directive* document. If approved at a forthcoming neighborhood meeting by this general assembly, it will go through the formal democratic process of statistical testing. If it passes that several step process, it will be delivered to the city state legislature for required passage into statutory law.

Moderator: “The next issue, which is related to the previous one, asks: Should the DNA of all newborns be published and made publicly available?”

Sheila: “Absolutely not. Who the biological father is, is the mother’s business.”

Jake: “Although the possibility of medical insurance premiums being impacted by DNA analysis is no longer an issue, it seems to me that DNA is basically private information – not for public nor commercial use.”

Lisa: “Actually, I’m for publication of such information. For one thing, it will influence married mothers to be more honest with their husbands. If a woman wishes to have a particular male impregnate her – fine, but let her do this honestly. Also, if a married woman suspects that some other

woman's child was fathered by her husband, she ought to be able to know that. If such DNA information were a matter of public record, the real fathers of all children could be identified and probably would be. Simple Pattern Processing applications could search the public database of DNA to identify what children each male has actually had. Also, such public scrutiny would help verify that the DNA data is accurate for medical and research purposes."

The moderator puts this up to a hands-up vote. The votes are mixed.

Moderator: "People. Should we investigate this issue further? If not, we'll just drop it."

Virtually all hands go up (to investigate further).

Moderator: "Do I have a volunteer group of detectives to investigate further and report back to us?"

A half-dozen hands go up.

Moderator: "OK – you people get together at the end of this meeting and form your work group.

It is now time to consider a pending *Policy Directive* dispatched by one of our sister neighborhoods. This regards some aspect of the communications network infrastructure. You should all have read the *Directive* before coming to this meeting. How many approve?"

Not many. There are questions like: what are the implications, and what can go wrong?

Moderator: "OK – we can't settle this without some detective work. Who wants to be detective on this one?"

Several people raise their hands. The meeting time limit is about to be exceeded. The attendees decide to end the formal meeting. They then congregate into their work groups, or discuss things with their friends, or just leave the premises.

City State Adjudication, 2056

In the NWO there is now less need for adjudication. In the past, the highest degree of social control was granted to hierarchical legal systems to give the aristocratic class power over the general population. Thus, social control was removed from the community as a whole. In the NWO, community is given a much greater role in adjudication, and the formal legal system of judges is closely watched by the general population.

To judge and possibly punish the more minor offenses, elected judges are used. Their decisions must be published, and when contested by public complaint, are subject to modification by public consideration.

For serious offenses, a judicial panel (JP) of randomly selected judges and citizens must be formed which decides the verdict and punishment. These are cases where the damage to the public or to a person or persons is significant. Again, if the public disagrees, the outcome must be further debated and determined.

Reconciliation, 2056

Lisa goes to her father who is now seventy four years old. Lisa: “Dad. I want to invite Investor 9 and his wife to visit with Jeff and me. How do you feel about it?”

Donald: “Aren’t you playing with fire? Do you appreciate what emotions you might be setting loose? And what good are you trying to accomplish?”

Lisa: “I know there’s some risk of an embarrassing emotional outburst. But the outcomes of all involved have turned out favorably. There is a high probability of some healthful reconciliation if I do this – don’t you think?”

Her Dad thinks for several minutes.

Donald: “I admit I’m curious. And I’d like to see reconciliation as well. This is a sore issue between our two families. If you want, do it. You don’t have to invite me and your Mom. It might be best for just the four of you to meet.”

Lisa: “Thanks Dad. I’ll do it.”

Lisa invites Investor 9 and wife for a light evening snack and to meet someone the wife has not seen for some time. By talking to Investor 9’s secretary, Lisa learns when they will be visiting the Chicago City State and free for such a visit. Sky and James (yes, Investor 9 is James Michner) accept.

The four meet at Donald Sturka’s penthouse residence as agreed. Jeff has merely been told that a James Michner and wife will be visiting. He is standing by a large window looking out at Lake Michigan, Grant Park, and Shedd Aquarium. The visitors are announced. Lisa goes to the entrance and invites them in. Lisa has met James many times, but only in the presence of her father. James introduces Sky to Lisa and they enter the great room where Jeff is facing the window.

Lisa: “Jeff. Sky. I believe you two once knew one another.”

Jeff turns around. Sky's face becomes ashen. Jeff's jaw drops. James is perplexed. Lisa starts to think maybe she has made a horrible mistake. Both Jeff and Sky turn to Lisa.

Lisa: "I thought it time for the two of you to reconcile with one another. What you, Sky and James, did was painful to Jeff, yet entirely rational. Jeff was terribly hurt, but that hurt became my opportunity to meet and fall in love with him – and I have given him two beautiful children. This would not have happened if the past was not as it was. Can the three of you now find peace between yourselves?"

Jeff: "Yes, I can." Turning to James. "James, I see now how handsome you are and how easily Sky fell for you. I was terribly bitter. I would have tried to kill you, had I the means. But when I met Lisa, all that evaporated. From the moment I held her in my arms, I thanked heaven for all that happened before."

Sky: Wiping tears from her eyes and going to Jeff and kissing him lightly on his lips. "I'm so sorry to have hurt you. But I'm not sorry I fell in love with James."

James: "Jeff. I knew I was hurting a man who did not deserve to be hurt. I was insanely full of want and lust for Sky. I simply did what my male selfishness demanded. And you should know that someone else would have taken her if I had not. But I am happy to meet you now, and terribly indebted to Lisa for bringing all four of us together. Jeff – can you forgive me?"

Jeff: "I believe I have. If I had been you, I probably would have behaved as you did. Frankly, at this point I'm more interested in what business or work you do, than what is past."

Lisa: “Jeff, James, why don’t you two discuss your technical backgrounds. Sky, why don’t you and I check on Jeff’s children who are down the hall?”

Dad Helps Ben, 2057

Ben is not faring as well with the young ladies his age as are his brothers. He has female friends, but his hesitancy to expose himself to potential rejection has inhibited his forming intimate relationships. Ben goes to his father wanting to talk to him.

Ben: "Dad, I'm having serious trouble with the women I'd like to be with. I'm OK with women I don't particularly want to be intimate with – but I get pretty bad, pretty choked up, when dealing with those I do. Any suggestions?" He looks his Dad in the eyes, his own face contorted with anguish and frustration.

James: "I've sensed your problem. It's a curious thing – you're a damned handsome young man and everything a woman could want. But it doesn't take much – even a small lack of self-confidence – to make women hesitate opening up to a potential mate. I think this is your problem and may have something to do with your Mom leaving me." Dad continues.

James: "When parents break-up, children sometimes get it into their heads, into their subconscious mind, that they are at fault – that they, the child, are the cause, the reason for the parents coming apart. They come to feel guilty, to feel something is wrong with them – that they are inferior. But that's completely wrong. Your mother, Barbara, and I broke up because she became jealous of my interest in Sky. Until Sky came along, she had been my 'favorite' so to speak. She

became angry with me, and maybe properly so. It had nothing to do with you – you were, and are, as perfect a son as any man could possibly want."

Ben: "Well, Dad, what should I do? My problem is real, even if the cause of it is irrational."

James: "I think you've got to get more self-confidence. You must work on your self-esteem. First, you might work out harder than you already do – at the gym, running, and swimming. As your man's body gets more muscular, hard, and well-shaped – your attitude about yourself will get better. Second, we are a family of engineers and scientists. Get that advanced degree you are already engaged in obtaining. A PhD, and maybe a position of influence in an organization, or celebrity status – gets you points with the ladies – that's a well known fact. Third, beyond what you've learned by my being your father, start learning from other males who get lots of female attention – their body movements, stance, way of talking, how they dress, their facial expressions, how they groom their hair, choice of clothing. You might adopt some of what you see. Fourth, force yourself, without hesitation, to meet and interact with a lot of the women you find of interest. When you get rejected, that's OK. And it's OK to be clumsy in some intimate encounters – you'll learn a lot. Next, I won't tell you to get rid of bad habits – things like: picking your nose, keeping your teeth clean, standing up straight, talking directly to people – not at the floor. You are already free of those. Last, keep your attitude and outlook as a mature, grownup, friendly, and mature person. More generally, make yourself ever more interesting. Be helpful to other people. Get involved in lots of interesting activities. Most important, don't forget you are a Michner. You have the

mind set to get things done and done correctly. You never give up.”

A Personal Choice, 2060

A young woman and a young man are sitting in the tabled area of the downtown Denver, Colorado art museum – next to the shimmering bath of water adjacent to the little refreshment concourse. It is mid-morning, and they have just purchased fruit drinks and croissants. They are discussing their relationship. She is extremely beautiful, vivacious, intelligent, and intent on living her life to the fullest. He is good looking, intelligent, and level-headed. They have been living together for some months and are very comfortable with one other. But there is little commitment. He wants to discuss how their relationship might go further.

He: “We get along pretty good together. But we’re not getting any younger. Why don’t we get married and have some children?”

She: “I’d like to have children – someday. And it’s easy to raise them. Compared to my parents – who had to constantly do all the tedium of watching over and raising them from babies to when they could look after themselves – it’s relatively easy. You know – maternal robots, collective arrangements for feeding and watching over them when you become committed to some project or adventure, and so on. But for now, I don’t want that commitment. Also, I don’t consider our relationship to be permanent. It’s nice for now, but things can change.”

He: “How?”

She: “Well – what if I meet some guy that really turns me on? I’m gonna want to fuck him, and I will.”

He: “You would do that – even if you and I are living together, or even married?”

She: “Yes. And that’s why I don’t want to be married.”

He: “I thought you loved me!”

She: “Not really. You’re OK for the time being, but that’s it.”

He: “What a fool am I.”

She: “If you thought this relationship was more than what I just said, then yes you are.”

He: “OK then. I’ll move my stuff out of your place.”

She: “Fine by me. Just don’t touch my stuff.”

She walks over to the main art exhibit. A young male artist is discussing his works, currently on display in this room, with a group of attractive young women. He notices her, and they exchange smiles. She joins the little crowd of those women and begins her flirtation.

By late nightfall she knows how he makes love. Her vag is tingling with excitement satisfied. She likes. And she likes him. Later, when by herself, she takes the plus-pill. In a day or two she will be fertile. After the third night with him, she will be pregnant. It will be her first child, a daughter. And it will be the tenth child he has sired.

State of the NWO, 2060

It is five years after the Cleansing. The city states are operating, world-wide, essentially as intended. The Northern California City State Research Institute is devoted to the study of important wide-scale social and governance

issues. One section, the one devoted to tracking the consequences of the cleansing, convenes a conference summarizing the current state of the NWO. The conference transcript contains the following selected discourse:

The following speaker was well involved in the design and production of the virus. Questions from the attending audience indicate this issue is probably the one of greatest concern.

Virus Researcher: *“You’ve asked me to address the principal concern most of you had about the cleansing – that the virus might mutate in a way that would endanger the survivors. This, almost certainly, has not happened. I’m happy, and much relieved myself, to be able to tell you that testing and examination of our extensive collection of samples, from scavenger species throughout virtually every human habitation exposed to the virus, has shown no dangerous mutation. This favorable outcome was predicted by extensive computer simulations, but most of us involved remained skeptical. This is because such simulations depend upon the model of reality used, and such models often fail to include some important factor that is mistakenly overlooked. So this is very good news. However, the issue of a possible dangerous mutation is of such existential importance that sampling and investigation of the possibility is and will continue, indefinitely, to be conducted.”*

The following speaker (we know him as Investor 5) was principal in the effort to optimize the world-wide drive to develop full-spectrum automation – automation sufficiently

pervasive to virtually eliminate the need for human labor. He reports on the current state of that automation.

James Larkensen: *“The concern you indicate by your question was also held by those of us who instigated the NWO, namely that automation alone, without the servitude provided by the cleansed, might not be sufficient to provide the plenitude of products and services required for the favored. This concern has almost entirely disappeared. Where gaps in production or service became apparent, we were able to apply repairs. Often, we’ve been able to substitute alternate components or material. In other instances, a high priority engineering effort was quickly made to automate the necessary process. Sometimes, but rarely, persons among the survivors have been able to volunteer a portion of their time to do the missing labor – with the understanding that their labor would be quite temporary – that the effort to automate or substitute would have a very high priority. Overall, we are close to automating virtually every task we care to. Moreover, we are constantly bringing in new and far improved automation to replace the first and second generations of automation that initially served us well.”*

Third in importance to the attending audience is the fear that military action, of some terrible sort, would occur either during the cleansing, or in its aftermath – the consolidation of the NWO. A former head of US Central Intelligence speaks to this.

Former US DCI: *“The threat of destructive military action has successfully been avoided. Guarantees to access scarce industrial, water, and other resources are*

understood by all city states, world-wide, to be sacrosanct. The amount of land available for settlement by the next generation of survivors is currently vast. There is little incentive to contest the control of such land with others. Furthermore, the distribution and partial merging of our national populations has become a factor for peace since it makes planning for war more difficult and provides a strong disincentive to try to villianize foreign populations. And so is our overall organization into moderate sized city states, each of which individually has little means and incentive to engage in foreign aggression. We see little compulsion, among our democratically governed city states, to threaten or disadvantage one another. Rather, the challenge for all parties of this generation, is to build stuff, to cure disease, to prolong the healthy life span of humans, and to participate in new adventures – including the colonization of the planets and even nearby star systems.

Still another speaker brings forth an unexpected consequence, not of the establishment of the NWO, but of the widespread prosperity brought about by pervasive automation. She was the principal investigator in the **US Doctors Study** at the Chinese WRI. She is now the Director of Statistical Studies of Social Importance here in this institute.

Lihua Chin: *“I’m afraid I’m the one here that has some negative news to report. Specifically, I need to report to you something no one seems to have predicted – the extreme reproductive behavior of the most desirable human females of the current generation. Our statistical studies show that a large proportion of them are, in every ethnic grouping, choosing to become impregnated by only*

a very few, exceptionally attractive males. Yet, in retrospect, this is not surprising. In the past, the most aggressive males, and particularly those of wealth or institutional power, were able to preferentially reproduce. Yet they were not especially attractive physically, nor did they give extreme excitement and pleasure to females. It was their societal power over others that gave them advantage. Moreover, the population selection just preceding the cleansing, which favored the inclusion, into the NWO, of attractive young females from the otherwise rejected lower classes, is a further factor. These very attractive young women, given total freedom in the NWO to choose reproductive partners as they themselves decide, are doing so. So, according to our studies and roughly speaking, one or two percent of the males, those extremely attractive to the female population, are mating with the most attractive females in the NWO (who are about 30 percent of the women of child bearing age). Those few males are thus fathering some 30 percent of the future population. The lesser 98 percent or so of the male population compete with one another for access to the less attractive 70 percent of females. And within that male group the top several percent are getting preferential access. It's a very tilted reproduction arrangement and one guaranteed to generate a great deal of resentment in most males. How this will turn out is yet to be seen."

Greg 2065 – Scene 1

Greg is James's first male child. He probably got more attention in his early years than the other children. He was quite competent and self-assured even when he was

seventeen. He is now thirty two. He has had many intimate relationships with women in the intervening years. This scene, and the next one, depict the most recent.

He first met Anna Brun seven years ago, in 2058. He was twenty five and so was she. Even then, she was a famous, ultra attractive, and sexy actress-celebrity – but very hard to approach and he was unable to do so.

Now, he is CEO of Advanced Solutions – Margret and James having decided to gradually relinquish control as they grew older. Recently a producer of movies, of films produced and shown on the information utility (think internet), has contacted him and wants him to observe the day-to-day operation of the current film-shoot. The producer wants Greg to make some sort of app to better track the shooting scenes and improve their quality. Greg meets the Producer and is shown around. He gets a good feel for what the various stage hands and others actually do. He is also introduced to the star of the current film: Anna Brun. Using a great deal of self-control, he suppresses his feelings since they are inappropriate to the situation.

That afternoon, Anna is delivered a large bouquet of flowers and a note. It is from Greg whom she recalls she very briefly met on the set, earlier in the day. He would like to meet her – at a very expensive restaurant in an exclusive hotel where only celebrities seem to frequent. She looks up his name on the advanced internet. He is a principal partner in a major enterprise called: Advanced Solutions. His family was definitely a member of the old 0.01%. She sends him a text telling him to meet her, this evening, at 7pm, at that restaurant.

Restaurant receptionist: “Good evening sir.”

Greg: “Would you please show me to Anna Brun’s table?”

Greg shows him his identification.

Restaurant receptionist: “Right this way sir!”

They recognize one another. She stands up.

Anna: “Hello Mr. Michner.”

Greg: “Hello Anna.”

They sit down. They each order some appetizers.

Anna: “Your note said you wanted to meet me here, Mr. Michner.”

Greg: “Yes. But please call me Greg. I saw you in the short film that was released last year, and have to admit I fell for you. Not only your beauty and grace, but also the intensity and power of your character interpretation. Today, while visiting the production staff of your current film, I saw you among the crew. We were briefly introduced.”

Anna: “Yes, I recall. Well, at least you are honest about your intentions. I know you are some kind of partner at a company called Advanced Solutions. You are rather young for that kind of position. May I ask you what you do – what you really do day-to-day?”

Greg: “Certainly. My Dad and Grandmother founded the company. It keeps up-to-date on technical research and products useful in making electronic circuitry. Also, it advises various medical and safety organizations in planning upgrades to their various kinds of administrative, surgical, and patient monitoring systems and devices. I split my time between overseeing the business, working with our technical staff, and visiting and advising our clients.”

Anna: “My Dad is an engineer. Are you also?”

Greg: “Yes – in fact I have a PhD in electrical engineering, and I direct the computer programming part of our business

– the team that codes the specialized software that enables various instruments to work together.”

Anna: “I’d like to see your company sometime. Can you give me a tour?”

Greg: “I’d be happy to. Would the coming Sunday be OK? Or do you all work then?”

Anna: “That would be fine. Is 10am OK? I usually have breakfast at the little restaurant on Telegraph and 24th street. [The city state has kept some of the old street names.]

Would you like to meet me there and have a light breakfast? Then you could take me to your company.”

Greg: “Great – it’s a date.”

He pays and leaves a large tip. They both leave.

Greg 2065 – Scene 2

Greg meets up with Anna Brun at the little restaurant which is near her residence. It is 10am Sunday morning. They are seated at a booth with high backs and some privacy. They each have ordered some light breakfast.

Greg: “Anna, I’ve requested one of our private robo-cars to pick us up when we finish here. The place will be nearly barren, but when the business has an urgent delivery to make, or when someone gets an idea he or she wants to try out – we do have people come in. We’ll be relatively free to mess around with some of the equipment, and you’ll get some idea of what we do. We’ll start at the ground floor and we’ll work our way up to the top – where I have my office.”

Anna: “Sounds great to me.”

They finish breakfast and head out. The car takes them to the rear entrance of the building – where Greg uses a

combination of a physical key and voice identification to get themselves in.

Greg: “On the weekends we use this entrance.”

They go in and tour the first floor: the reception area in the front, the demonstration and systems delivery rooms used to let customers test what is to be delivered, and customer training rooms.

Anna: “This makes sense. It’s kind of an intermediate place between the workings inside the company, and the customers it services.”

Greg: “Exactly. Let’s look at some other floors.”

They use the elevator to go to the second.

Anna: “This looks like where a lot of computer programmers must do their work. So many computers and terminals – and books that look like geek bibles.”

Greg: “Yes. And lets take a look at this one. It’s where I sit when I need to do some coding or test something.”

He pulls up a chair for her, and they both face the computer monitor.

Anna: “I see you are starting some kind of hospital simulation program.”

Greg: “Right. This was the test and simulation run of the hospital information system we delivered to the Northern California General Hospital last week. Everything here is configured just like it is in the hospital.”

Greg selects the ‘single step’ mode whereby the simulation viewer can see what happens at every small event happening at the hospital.

Greg: “Anna, go and touch the green triangle on the screen to start it off.”

She does so. Then she repeatedly presses the ‘single step’ button. At each touch, some little thing happens. In one such

step a nurse scans a patient face, whereupon the patient's name and panel of basic information shows up. The next step tells the nurse to attach the vital signs bundle around the patients arm and finger. The step following shows the blood pressure, heart rate, temperature, and so on.

Anna: "Neat!"

Greg: "You have to understand that thousands of steps happen in a hospital every few minutes. Other programs, we call them 'hospital function tests,' work together with this kind of simulation – to check that the right things are done at the right time, and that the various numbers, like blood pressure, are properly interpreted and responded to. All the doctor and nurse queries are likewise checked. Altogether, millions of events are scrutinized. Anomalies are reported to the simulation operator. That is how we fix errors and problems before delivery to the hospital."

Anna: "Is this kind of programming part of your department?"

Greg: "Yes, pretty much this floor is my technical responsibility. I know how to do most everyone's job, and often fill-in for them when I have to."

Anna: "I think this is great! What you do here is very important – and you are sufficiently mature to be trusted to make sure it happens and happens correctly."

Greg: "Anna, what you are doing is also very important. All of us need your drama to enrich and expand and understand our own lives."

He looks soberly and lovingly at her while he says that.

Greg: "Should we take a look at some of the other floors?"

Anna: "Yes. Take me to where you do some electronics."

They go to the fifth floor. Here the circuit design people have their various work stations, desks, electronic parts, oscilloscopes, and so on.

Anna: “This looks just like where my Dad worked.”

Anna and Greg use what’s called a ‘logic analyzer’ to check the operation of a microprocessor controlled walk-around stand which contains measuring devices used in a patient’s office visit.

Greg: “Want to check out some other floors?”

Anna: “No. I’d like to see your office.”

The elevator takes them to the twelfth floor, the top floor. There is a receptionist’s desk just outside the office and a plaque announcing this is Greg Michner’s office. They enter the office. It overlooks the Bay, the famous bridge, and Golden Gate Park. There is a large desk and a very comfortable, padded leather chair. There are a number of framed pictures on the walls. Anna takes a look at them. One shows Greg with a surf board getting out of the water.

Anna: “This picture was taken recently, wasn’t it.”

Greg: “Sure was, a few months ago. We had a late Spring beach party.”

She looks over several other pictures. She notices what must be his Grandparents, James and Julie Michner, with Greg’s Mother Margret.

Greg: “Those are my grandparents, and my mother in between. Anna, why don’t you sit in that comfy chair and let’s talk.”

She does so, and he pulls up a small chair to sit next to her.

Anna: “Say what’s on your mind, Greg.”

He looks at her with that puppy dog face that is a family male tradition.

Greg: “You know I wanted to meet you, and I’ve hinted that I find you to be very attractive and very nice. I’m not pushy, and I truly respect women. Do you find me interesting and attractive? If you don’t, I’ll respect that and will take you back to wherever you want. Or if you want to know me better, I’ll help you do that in whatever ways I can.”

Anna: “You are more than interesting, Greg. You’ve proven your competence and worth to have children. You are the kind of man I want to have a child with. I don’t need a long courtship. I know what I want. This movie work will be over in a matter of a few months. Like all women these days, I’m able to survive on the basic income everyone gets as part of society. I also have a bankroll from my acting and other work. I don’t need, and don’t want, a husband. I don’t need a male to hang onto forever, nor one to hang around me forever. Would you like to impregnate me?”

Greg breathes deeply and briefly closes his eyes. He actually cries a little.

Greg: “Anna, yes, yes, yes. I want you so badly.”

They both stand up and kiss and hug.

Greg: “There is a room attached to this office. We use it when there is a terrible amount of work to do and I or my staff needs some place close to get some sleep and a shower. Let me show it to you.”

He does a few clicks on his PC. A wall panel opens, and they enter. A bed, a pair of bathrooms, and some other furniture are evident. The room looks out toward the Bay. They go inside. He pushes the control to make the door close. She takes his hand and pulls him toward the bed.

Greg: “Anna, I’m happy to let you take control.”

Anna: “Let me undress you.”

She proceeds to do so. First his tie and shirt, then his belt, and so on – until all his clothes are on a nearby, small chair.

Anna: “Thank God there are some men like you. Greg, undress me.”

He does so.

Greg: “Anna, unless you tell me to stop now, I don’t think I will be able to if we go further.”

Anna: “Greg, take me. After you warm me up some more, get on your back on the bed, and let me get on top of you.” No more needs to be shown. They will meet many more times in the days and weeks ahead. She will bear him a daughter. They will remain friends the rest of their lives. He will be, hundreds of times, with her and this child for significant periods of time. And they may even have more children together. The choice will be theirs, and time will tell.

Ben, 2065

The Mars Colonization Project (MCP) was approved by the CHOSEN of planet Earth in 2062. It is a long term project for which serious research and planning aspects are now funded. Dr. Benjamin Michner is one of a dozen directors on the project. He is in his administrative office in the Bay area high rise building used as the project headquarters.

Although he is a competent and handsome young man, he does not think he is. His normal facial expression shows no self-confidence. His friends, who are many, accept him as he is.

He is scheduled to meet a candidate who wishes to join the team as a research assistant, and he is waiting for her. She knocks at his office door. He comes to the door and opens it.

Ben: “Hello, I’m Dr. Michner. Are you Kate Blanik?”

Kate: “Yes.”

Ben: “Please come in and have a seat.”

He takes her to a set of chairs and coffee table toward the side of the office. He let’s her take a seat, and sits across from her. She has raven black hair, and she is beautiful. But she is one of those ladies who does not think she is. She is not self-confident.

Kate: “Thank you.”

Ben: “I’ve got your resume on the wall screen so we can discuss it – along with the written report from several members of our team who have already interviewed you.” She reads the report.

Kate: “I see that the team would like to take me in!”

Ben: “Yes. And I would too. But there is one thing that bothers us, a kind of personal thing that perhaps you’d rather not discuss.”

Kate: “And what is that?”

Ben: “For a very competent and beautiful young woman, you seem to not have much self-confidence in yourself. Is there something we should know about?”

Kate: “Well – I’ve always been unhappy about my nose. Yet, I’ve never felt I should have it surgically fixed – that’s dishonest. I believe I am what I am and should not try to hide it. I’m faulty and I accept that.”

Ben: “Kate – I’m the same way. I’m not a self-assured male and I know it shows. But in your case, what you feel is just not true. In fact, your slightly different nose is just kind of a

mark of character that sets you a little apart. It does not at all make you ugly.”

Kate: “And, Dr. Michner, why do you not feel as self-confident as I most often see men in your position? You seem so sad. Is there something hidden here that I should know about?”

Ben: “Touche! Kate. I don’t really know why. I’m told I’ve been this way since my mother left my Dad many years ago.”

Kate: “Well – do you want to bring me into the team?”

Ben: “Yes. Consider yourself accepted.”

Kate: “That’s wonderful! Now, I want to ask you something. Do you really consider me beautiful?”

Ben: “I do, I really do.”

He has that puppy dog look on his face, just as did his great grandfather John with Henrietta decades ago in Golden Gate Park. Kate stands up, Ben rises also, and she walks up to him, looks him straight in his eyes, then hugs and kisses him. He holds her and he cries. He kisses her firmly and holds her tight.

Kate: “If you want, you can take me.”

Ben: “Let me think. There is a fold-down bed in the wall.”

Kate: “Let’s lower it.”

They do so.

Kate: “Let me undress you.”

He says yes. She does so – from head to toes.

Kate: “Now you undress me.”

He does so. She then sits on the edge of the bed. His hands and lips and tongue massage and kiss and lick everything. She pushes him away for a moment. She gets fully on the bed.

Kate: “Enter me.”

He does so.

Dr. Feldstein, one of the MCP team technical leads, sees the lights on in the office. The signage at the side of the door does not say stay out. He starts to open the door – and quickly sees clothes on the floor and two intertwined bodies on a pull down bed. He quietly closes the door and smirks. He goes away. Later, Ben and Kate go to the regular afternoon staff meeting. Ben introduces her as a new member of the project team and as an expert on radiation that will be encountered between Earth and Mars. The team notices that Ben’s and Kate’s faces are exuding a degree of elation and self-confidence that they have not seen before. Also, there seems to be a bit of lipstick on Ben’s shirt collar. Some of the team show a bit of a smirk. All are pleased he and Kate are happy.

Here’s The Deal, 2065

We are in a neighborhood of the expanded City State of Northern California near the Golden Gate Park and Bay.

A young man is madly in love with a beautiful and intelligent young woman. He has asked her to marry him. She said she needed to think about it, and she has.

Janet: “You asked me to marry you. I said I needed to think it over. Well, I have. Here’s the deal. I’m as beautiful as can be. I want a family – a husband and perhaps five children. I want you to be my husband. I love you, and you’re very good in bed. But I want more. I’m very beautiful. I know it, you know it, and so does every adult male I’ve ever met. Every once in a while I’ll meet some particularly handsome and competent man that I’ll want to be with for several

nights. In a few of these encounters, no more than twice, I'll get impregnated by him and have his child – which you will accept and treat as yours. The real father will never visit. The other three children will be yours – as DNA tests will verify. You are free to have children by other women – that I will accept – but you may not visit them. Is it a deal? If not, I'm out of here.”

Ted: He lowers his head in pain, in terrible anguish. He didn't expect this. He thinks a very long time. Finally he speaks.

“I can't bear the thought of living without you. I accept your very painful terms.”

Janet: “Good. Yesterday I met a gorgeous young man and agreed to stay with him tonight. I know that's painful to you, but you'd better start getting used to it. To help you, I'm sending a friend, Judy, to stay with you tonight to be your companion. I'll see you tomorrow.”

She leaves. That evening Judy visits. She knocks, and Ted lets her in. Without speaking, she takes him by the hand and leads him to the bedroom and places her purse on the chest of drawers facing the side of the bed. She sits on the edge of the bed, right next to him, takes off her shoes, and starts unbuttoning her blouse.

Ted: “No, you shouldn't be here. Please, just let me be.”

Judy: “What's the matter? Am I not attractive enough? Are you a man or aren't you?”

Ted: “No. That's not it. The lady I love is with another male. All I can see, all I can think of, is him kissing her, him, this handsome man, undressing her, fondling her, her wanting him to do so, wanting him to touch her, wanting him to enter her, him entering her, his fluid gushing inside her. It drives me insane. I can't bear it. I wish I were dead!”

He turns to Judy.

“I know Janet sent you, but there is nothing for you to do here.”

Judy: “Yes there is. Ted, I’ve called a robo-car. It is waiting outside for us. Don’t ask any questions – just come with me.”

She grabs her purse, closes something inside of it, and takes it with her. He, half in a daze, gets pulled along. The robo-car scoots across part of what used to be San Francisco, and discharges its passengers at the residence entrance to a skyscraper. They get out. Using her credentials they take the elevator to the top floor and press the door ringer by the apartment front door. The door opens. A middle aged man with graying hair tells them to come in. They do so and are standing in a medium sized room.

James: The man with gray hair. “I believe you are Ted?”

Ted: “Yes I am.”

Janet enters the room. Ted sees her. His face lights up. He runs to her, crying. He hugs her, he kisses her, he falls to his knees and holds her midsection tight. He let’s her loose, stands up and asks:

“I thought you were with someone??”

James has come up to Ted, takes him by the hand and leads him to a nearby couch. Janet sits next to him. James and Judy sit on separate chairs pulled up close to the couch.

James: “I think we can settle this. I’m Janet’s father. Judy is Janet’s half-sister. This place is where Janet grew up – with a dozen of her siblings. The Michner family has a special way of testing suitors as potential marriage partners to anyone in our brood.”

Janet: “As you see, I did not go out with any other male tonight. I love you Ted, and I don’t like hurting you, but I

had to dig deeper into your feelings for me.” She turns to Judy. “Judy, turn on your recording.” Judy does so. The scene between Ted and Judy in Ted’s bedroom plays on the large display screen on the wall facing the couch. They all watch and hear. When it is finished, James speaks.

James: “Ted. We all know you love her. By now you must realize everything she told you earlier today about needing lovers was just to test you. It’s a painful test, but she and we needed to know. It’s important for you to know that this is the same pain she would feel if ever you betray her – and it would be made worse by knowing her children were sired by someone who betrayed her. The test is over, son-in-law. Welcome to the family!”

Ted: Looking at Janet and holding her hands.
“The anguish was terrible, but I feel no ill will that you tested me. I see it’s been a good way to bring us all together.”

James: “Ted, Janet – come with me.”

James takes them both to Janet’s bedroom and private area.

James: “This was her personal place during the time she was growing up and living at home. Why don’t the two of you try to share and sleep in this bed tonight. It’s only a little bigger than twin size, but I’ll bet you can do it.”

A Security Situation, 2065

A security ‘situation’ could happen anywhere in the NWO, but this one happens in the Northern California City State.

Zoe has a jealous suitor. She has rejected him in favor of another male, a man named Leroy, whose baby she is now carrying. The suitor cannot accept the fact of it. At recent social gatherings, he has shown hostility to Leroy. He has

been shadowing Zoe. The suitor is a known expert at security communications and may be able to hack her security protection. Unknown to him, her mate is also knowledgeable about such systems and has installed another system, with different devices and communication codes, in her normal surroundings. This supplementing system is completely separate from the standard network and cannot be hacked. Zoe and Leroy fear the jealous suitor may attempt to breach her apartment and do violence – particularly when Leroy visits her. They set a trap. A friend, with police training and experience, volunteers to occupy an adjacent, uninhabited apartment for a period of time. Zoe invites Leroy over to ‘spend some time’ with her. The texting and voice communications they use is adjusted to bypass serious encryption. It becomes night. It is about 10pm. Leroy stands by the unobscured window, more than half-naked, showing his sculpted chest and back, and embracing Zoe. A few minutes later, Zoe and Leroy are entwined, under the sheets of her bed. The volunteer friend is on alert.

Zoe: “Do you think he knows and has taken the bait?”

Leroy: “I hope so. We know someone has accessed your security data in the last several minutes.”

Someone, using a maintenance access identification code, has entered the building front door. That person uses the stairs to get to Zoe’s floor and advances to her door.

Volunteer: Using their special equipment he communicates: “Zoe, Leroy. The suspect is at your door. It looks to me he’s got some kind of hand gun.”

Zoe and Leroy quickly jump out of bed and arrange the blankets to seem two persons are still entwined. She goes to another room. Leroy quickly puts on shorts, grabs a taser-

like disabling device, and goes to the hinged side of the front door.

Leroy: Texting. “I’m by the door with a taser.”

Suitor is holding some kind of inductive device near the door lock – right where the unlock electronics is located. He presses a button that sends a release code of the sort that would be issued when there is a fire. The door unlatches. He opens the door. Of course, all the alarm system devices, including the camera viewing the door, are recording this. The rejected suitor steps in and sees the corridor to the bedroom. He moves in that direction, his muffled hand gun pointed in that direction.

Leroy: “Stop! Don’t move. Don’t turn your head, or I’ll shoot!”

The volunteer has been rushing to the open door, gun drawn. As Suitor starts to turn his head, Volunteer reaches the doorway, and commands: “One more move and I’ll blow your brains out! Slowly raise your hands with that gun pointed toward the ceiling!” Suitor does so. Volunteer takes the gun, and gives it to Leroy. Volunteer then handcuffs Suitor with his hands to his back. AI has detected this unusual activity, declared a security event, and has locked Zoe’s local data – thus making it available for courtroom use. The official city state police arrive, take custody, and do a data dump of the sensors and local security processing storage. Zoe’s data will be used in filing charges and as evidence in court.

Adjudication & Punishment, 2066

In the Northern California City State, a jilted, jealous suitor has been caught attempting to murder a woman’s

companion and possibly her as well. He is now to be judged and punished. It is a serious offense, thus a Judicial Panel (JP) has been formed to judge and sentence.

JP: “You are charged with attempted murder. Suitor, how do you plead?”

Suitor: “Guilty.”

JP: “The evidence supporting the claim of attempted murder is overwhelming: physical evidence indicating forced entrance with a firearm, and three corroborating witnesses demonstrating motive and intent.”

JP: “Let the record reference the evidence.”

JP: “Let’s proceed with the punishment. We see no need to delay that. The people of the New World Order recently removed from existence nearly nine billion persons deemed unfit to occupy the known universe. Let the record show the entity before us should most certainly have been among those so dealt with. We hereby sentence you to death by the most immediate method available in this jurisdiction. Of course, and as a matter of procedure, our verdict must be validated by public vote at the next scheduled public ratification event.”

JP: “We wish to record a special recommendation referencing this case. Had this individual not committed the act of forced entry and attempted murder, he would still have been a threat to our civilization. We need some process by which such individuals are identified, then rendered harmless to the citizenry. We suggest to the Neighborhoods Network that this issue be considered.”

JP: “Court is adjourned!”

A Peek into the Life of Judy, 2067

Judy is the daughter of a prominent automation engineer. It is 5am in the morning in Judy's apartment in the Northern California City State. She awakens without the help of any kind of alarm. She pulls her large bedside display and keyboard (she doesn't like the speech recognition interface) around from the side so she can look over the day's events and duties while sitting up in bed. She looks up her schedule for the day. It shows:

8am-12noon	volunteer: children's room
1pm-5pm	Movie and Mixer at the Medical Research Institute

The children's room volunteering is part of an oversight program whereby physicians, like her, get to mingle with small children who might have medical issues that parents might not recognize. By being on hand and interacting with them for a good period of time – she can often recognize problems (emotional, eye sight, hearing, speech, movement coordination, posture, and much else).

In regard to the Mixer, she had previously noticed a presentation is going to be given regarding an apparatus, being developed, that promises to help create patient specific immunobodies for use as a highly effective cancer treatment. However, the presenter, named John, has caught her attention for an entirely different reason – she is emotionally captured by his appearance, demeanor, and sense of responsibility to others – this latter trait as revealed by his work in the medical arts. She has studied both his

resume and the private information he chose to make public. He's thirty five years old and not married. He is an institute director and project leader to the group developing the new medical instrument. She finds pictures of him: his face, on the beach holding a surf-board, and a video of one of the lectures he's given. She really wants to meet this man.

A Peek into the Life of John, 2067

At the Medical Research Institute in Northern Cal, John, one of James's sons, is busy preparing for his presentation in the 'Mix' – a convention-like, open-to-the-public event scheduled for this afternoon. His back-up research apparatus has been moved to the large customer support theater in his research building, along with several marquees, colored brochures, furniture, recording equipment, and more. He needs to verify everything is set-up and working properly.

While still sitting-up in bed this morning, John looked over a list of the people attending his forthcoming demonstration. Judy is a MD specializing in patients with hard to cure cancers. He obtained her picture, learned she is twenty eight years old, and is unmarried with no children. He definitely wants to meet her.

The Mixer, 2067

This takes place in the huge meeting room in the Medical Research Institute where John is a director and project lead. The room has the noisiness and smell of any late 20th Century convention center – although it is much smaller.

The world is a very different place when everyone has a basic income, education to the extent they want, as much

medical care as they need, access to interesting, creative, activity – and connection to a huge variety of interesting people – including potential sex partners.

Most stress is gone. However, the reproductive urges and related emotions remain and are even stronger than before. Relationships become more subject to change, and change in friends and partners far more frequent.

The show, the convention, here at the Institute, is to report the accomplishments of the Medical Research Institute. But it is more – it is a ‘Mixer’ as well.

A Mixer is a big part of how the NWO works. The old motivations to acquire money and dominance are mostly absent. So what motivates people to do the still necessary work of society? Automated machinery needs to be tended. Productive machinery sometimes needs repair or replacement. Research into medicine, physics, and all else, is still important. Why should anyone bother to do it? Curiosity? Yes – but it’s not enough. Altruism? Maybe some are so motivated – but again, it’s not sufficient. (Remember the old Soviet Union?) So then what? Look for the answer in a place as old as the evolution of creatures: the emotions and built-in compulsion to reproduce, and the pleasurable sensations and extreme satisfaction that evolution attaches to such activity.

Why do women pursue education, meaningful work, and develop mental sophistication and acuity? In part to engage in interesting activity and for social acceptance, but mostly to attract the better males. It’s not enough to be beautiful and bear children. They need to show maturity, intelligence, and good judgment as well.

Why do males become competent and publicly recognized, and have athletic bodies? To increase the likelihood of mating.

The ‘mixers,’ as they are called, are regular gathering places for humans for an important purpose. It is where women most often come to find mates they find the most desirable, based on both appearance and competence. And because women so come to it, it then becomes the place where males come to strut their feathers – to attract the most beautiful and desirable females. They earn that right to mix, as very visible players in the game of life, by being accomplished, competent, and thus chosen to demonstrate the worthy thing they’ve created or administered into existence. Their highly visible appearance here is akin to the colored plumes of the peacock. Today, at this Mixer, Judy and John will meet, face-to-face, and determine whether it is to kiss or not to kiss.

John has been explaining his pet project of the last several years. His audience is attentive and receptive. He looks up. He sees Judy and smiles. She smiles back and waits. He finishes with his audience, then goes to her.

John: “Judy, Hello! I’m John.”

Judy: “John, you recognized me when you were talking to those people over there. But we’ve never met before.”

John blushes. He has to confess his interest in her.

John: “Yes – before I came I looked up the people who were registered for this demo. I saw your picture and name.”

She smiles.

Judy: “I did the same for you. And I looked-up everything about you that I could. Would you like to show me your T-Cell Incubator?”

He does. He finds out she could really use this in her work. They talk and examine the instrument together for over a half-hour. Other visitors get tired waiting to get his attention and walk away. Finally, the two forget the instrument and again pay attention to one another.

Judy: “John, would you like to visit me later at my apartment?”

He brightens up with delight.

John: “Yes, most certainly!”

Judy: “Here is a destination card that a robo-car can scan to get you there. I’ll expect you about 8pm.”

Judy, John Mix, 2067

It is 8pm, and John rings the door bell to Judy’s apartment. Judy sees it’s him on the video intercom, then lets him in.

Judy: “John, come on in.”

He kisses her. They are both filled with anticipation. She makes him take off his shoes by the door. She takes his hand and leads him to her bedroom. She has showered and he did too – just before he came. They are both standing next to the bed.

Judy: “John, you may take charge.”

John: “Judy, please undress me.”

First she takes off his thin, bright, red tie and loops it twice about his neck. With his helpful maneuvering she removes the remainder of his clothes. She likes what she sees. She kisses him firmly on the lips.

John: “It’s my turn now.”

He now undresses her. When naked, and after his tongue has aroused her to want, very terribly, penetration – she pulls herself fully onto the bed, then pulls on the tie to get him on top of her.

Dear reader: You may be getting tired of this kind of scene. But in the world of the future this may become the staple of behavior for humanity. The emotions apparent here – are the driving force of a freed humanity. It's something to think about, and that's why it's here.

Heaven & Hell On Earth, 2067

Roxy, one of the children of Andy Aldren and Anna Summerset, is a beautiful young woman married to a quite handsome young man, Ted, who is one of James Michner's children. They were educated in the Northern California City State and have just moved to the Seattle City State where he accepted employment as a MD. She is currently outfitting their new apartment and looking for work as a certified nurse. They have recently joined a fitness club and are now, at 6am, on adjacent exercise machines doing the aerobic part of their workout. The following talk is unspoken, it is the speech each has to one's self.

Roxy: "There's that tattooed, muscular fellow those three ladies in the locker room were so excitedly talking about. Two of them told the third that he was a policeman, solidly built, and the greatest they had ever had. One of them said: 'He makes you soar, he takes you to Heaven on Earth. I've never before or since experienced anything like it.' They both note to the third lady that he won't take you unless you're very beautiful. Only the best for him.

I see him over there by that weight machine. His solid arms are tattooed like they said. He moves like a man should, he looks manly, has a pleasant face, and seems to talk friendly to the people, mostly women, who come up to him. Some of the women, all beautiful, give him a warm hug. He gets so much attention from these lovely ladies that he hardly has time to do his workout.

Now he's back to what seems to be his favorite machine. A woman has come up to a machine near where he is pulling a huge amount of weight. She's beautiful, in tights, and she smiles at him while doing some light exercising of her own. He starts to notice her – at this point he very clearly does not know her. He stops his pulling and stands up, facing her. He steps toward her and they begin talking. She flips her hair to the side and backwards. They continue to talk, sometimes laughing, but her eyes never leave his face and she is always smiling. He points to the ladies dressing room. She nods yes. They go back to their machines. In a few minutes she leaves and heads to the lockers. Three or four minutes after that he goes and sits on the bench just outside that dressing room. A few minutes later still, she comes out and the two of them exit the building together.

Wow! No question about what happens next! I'm going to check that man out."

During that same period Ted has noticed the same drama, and is talking to himself. He sees a very pretty woman flirt with, and get picked-up by, a very muscular and manly looking man. Ted sees them terminate their workouts and leave together. Ted is quite sure they have not met before, and presumes they have just agreed to have sex together.

Ted: "That fellow is some sort of god's gift to women, and that woman probably found out from other ladies that he is quite a lover. He must be having sex with dozens, if not hundreds, of very attractive women. What will the future of humanity be like if males like this come to dominate human reproduction? Why should any male, who is not so favored, bother to become competent, become useful, and help build a better human future, one in which he has no stake, where he will have no descendants? It's quite depressing."

Several days later, Ted is out of town for training related to his new position as MD at the local hospital. Roxy is at the fitness center, on one of the treadmills. The manly man comes in and begins his routine. He soon goes to the cluster of machines where the intimate encounter took place the other morning. Most of the machines around him are currently unused. She goes over to the machine where the lady positioned herself that other day, and she begins a virtually identical flirtation. She is easily as beautiful as was that other lady. She is wearing black tights dotted with small silvery sequins. After a minute, he realizes she is trying to get his attention. He stops his workout, faces her, steps toward her and begins a conversation.

Manly man: "My name is Jed. I thought I saw you the other day – but you were with a young man."

Roxy: "Yes. He's a close family relative – but will be out of town on a work trip for a number of days. By the way, my name is Roxy."

She says this with a coy kind of expression that suggests she's quite free to do as she pleases for that duration. She continues to smile and cannot seem to keep her eyes off of him.

Jed: "Well. I'm pleased to meet you Roxy. Do you have any questions about the use of the equipment here? Or if you are new in the area, I may be able to answer some questions you may have."

Roxy: "Possibly. The ladies in the dressing room tell me that you are quite knowledgeable about the area, in fact you are a policeman."

Jed: "Yes. I am a cop. Did these ladies also have other comments about me?"

Roxy: "Yes. They told me you are a very talented, competent man who lives an exciting life."

She has that coy look on her face as she says that.

Jed: "Well. They might be exaggerating."

Roxy: "From what I see, I don't think they are."

Jed: "Do you find me interesting? I mean from a woman to man point of view?"

Roxy: "Yes. Very much so. And I really have no urgent tasks I need to attend to this morning."

Jed: "Would you like to go with me to where we would have some privacy, say my apartment? I'll be finishing my workout in just a few minutes. I can wait for you outside the ladies dressing room, and we can leave together."

He turns his gaze toward the dressing room as he says that.

Roxy: She smiles. "It sounds like a date to me!"

At his apartment he shows her around. He has a number of service awards, pictures of himself in uniform, some decorations he received while serving in the military, and some photos of the martial arts class he has taught. He takes her to the bedroom. His service sidearm and holster is on a little table next to the bed. He looks annoyed.

Jed: "This shouldn't be here."

He moves it to the table drawer. She puts her purse where the weapon was. She comes up close to him and looks him in the eyes. She touches his shoulders and chest. He is solid, hard muscle. She imagines how exciting his penetration of her will be. He kisses her, she arches her back. He puts his hands on the small of her back and pulls her closer to him. They mouth kiss. She pushes him away and starts to undress. He then does so too. Soon they are naked. He has a full erection. She is already very aroused and obviously willing to go further.

Jed: "Let's take a shower together." She agrees. He takes her to the shower while telling her how beautiful she is. They laugh about the water splashing in their faces as he soaps and washes her from neck to feet. With excited anticipation, she then washes him. They kiss and fondle as the water rinses the soap off both. He turns off the shower and partially dries her and himself with a nearby towel. With his powerful hands he lifts her by her bottom. He enters her as she wraps her legs around his waist. In seconds she is moaning. In a minute she is shouting with excitement and pleasure. In a further very short period of time her lower body pulsates uncontrollably. She climaxes. They dry themselves off.

Roxy: "You're even better than I was told. My God, what a man you are."

Jed: "Shall we try another position ladies seem to like?" She says yes. He then takes her over to a chair without arms, sits on it, and tells her to sit on his lap. She does so, facing him and with her female parts lowered onto his erection. Again she soon screams with delight. After climax, they relax but remain coupled. Later, both still want more, and he tells her to kneel on top of the bed in what Yoga people call

the Extended Puppy Pose. She climbs in, her head down, her face tilted left toward the head of the bed, and her vagina up and available from the side of the bed. Standing up he enters her. After more exclamations of delight and another soaring climax, he lies down and she rolls over on top of him. They relax and even sleep a bit. Fully sated, they get up, quickly shower together, then dress. While dressing, Jed takes a close look at her purse. The bottom looks a bit suspicious to his policeman's eye. He pry's open a suspicious area. There is a tiny lens there. At another, there is a tiny microphone. He tears the bottom off – revealing a processing layer and a short range radio frequency link. He shows it to her, rips out the data storage section, and tells her to get rid of the purse before she gets home. As he accompanies her back to the fitness center, he tells her: ‘If anyone causes you trouble because you visited me, call me right away. I’ll pay him a visit.’ She arrives home – about three hours later than is normal for her.

Days later, Ted comes back from his schooling. It is late afternoon. Roxy is spending the day interviewing at a hospital and then a clinic in the area. Ted sits down at his computer. He is a MD but also has a degree in electrical engineering. He is quite knowledgeable about surveillance technology as well, and has engineered a security application to monitor not only their household events but to keep track of both his and his wife's activity. He checks the event summary for the several days he's been away. There are some red flags. Several days ago his wife did not come back from the fitness center at her usual time. It was three hours later. And her purse stopped sending data to her watch-bracelet (which he gave as a gift to her more than a

year ago) one-half hour before she returned home. Ted examines further. When she did come home, her bracelet downloaded the data it contained to Ted's monitoring equipment. That data contains masses of audio and video – much of which is flagged as 'Should Examine.' Ted examines the final portion of it. It shows the manly man, from the gym, looking close up at the purse bottom and exclaiming: 'This purse is bugged, we've got to get rid of it.' Ted's heart sinks. He goes further into the data. It shows a bed, his wife's head touching the mattress, her face looking to the side. The view from the small table shows her uncovered breasts hanging down toward the mattress. That same man is having sex with her. His erection is stroking back and forth into her. Her mouth is open, she is crying with excitement, and her lovely bottom is bobbing up and down to the rhythm of intercourse. His muscular lower arms are manipulating her buttocks to heighten her pleasure – in rhythm with his vaginal penetration. The audio confirms her screaming and heavy breathing, the sounds of the mattress flexing, and her occasional begging for more. After climax, he pulls out, she rolls over, he climbs into the bed, and she quickly climbs on top of him, guiding his ample erection to again enter her. Ted sees that both are relaxed, and both are fully sated.

Ted briefly examines a sampling of the rest of the data, all of which was triggered by unusual audio sounds or by visual data showing uncommon physical movement. He is in shock. Over the next half-hour he struggles to compose himself.

Roxy arrives home from her interviews. She sees her husband has arrived home from his trip. She sees he's in his

computer office, sitting in his work chair. Some innocuous text is on the screen, covering some other open windows. She greets him. He turns to her, his face taut with anguish. She is taken aback. He sees she has a different purse.

Ted: "I see you have a different purse. What happened to the other one?"

Roxy: "I spilled a cup of juice on it, and threw it away. Anyway, it was getting old and frayed."

Ted: "Let me show you how it got 'thrown away.'"

He grabs her roughly by the arm, sits her in the computer chair, brings up the video screen, and lets it play. It shows the scene where the lover grabs the purse, examines it, and cuts into the base of it to show the surveillance components.

Roxy: "I can't believe it! How did you get this?"

Ted: "You mean why didn't destruction of the purse eliminate the data? I'll tell you why. You married an electronics engineer." He plays for her the bed scene. She is aghast.

Roxy: "You spied on me. I despise you!"

Ted is shocked again. His face shows even more hurt. He lowers his head in deep pain.

Ted: "So this is the real truth. This is what you really think of me. Fine. Tomorrow, I'll file for divorce."

She breaks down. He cries.

Roxy: "Oh my God. No. What a fool I am. Ted, I didn't mean that. Please listen to me."

She looks at him straight to his eyes. Tears are in hers. She gently touches him. She is in pain. She continues.

Roxy: "I now realize some things. Yes – he fucks real good, I admit that. But I don't want that man's children. I want my children by a curer of disease, a doctor and medical researcher, an engineer and builder – a man who loves with

his heart and soul – not just with his penis. I want a man who loves me, who is not just using me like a toy for his own pleasure and as a way to feed his ego. Ted, I really love you. I'm so ashamed of what I've done. I beg you, don't leave me. What I just did will not happen again."

Ted: "But he got you to a high, three times in this one encounter – highs I was never able to get you to. That is obviously very important to you. You'll go back to him, or someone like him."

Roxy: "No. I was hopped-up, listening to those ladies in the dressing room, the drama of the woman approaching, then leaving with him the other day. I went to him mostly out of curiosity – I wanted to know what the ladies in the locker room meant when they said this guy was the best. And there was the childish anticipation, the excitement of doing something forbidden. Ted, please don't feel I'll do this again – I really won't."

Ted: "I don't think I can ever trust you again."

Roxy: "Please – let's try to get past this."

Ted: "Let's think about it for a day or two."

A Woman's Wrath, 2067

Kate Beker and Rob Michner are a married couple. Kate is pregnant with their first child, and they plan to have a second child not long after the first is born. Both Kate and Rob are engineers associated with the Infrastructure Engineering Institute in their city state.

That Institute has been contracted to provide the necessary engineering and installation work for an advanced robo-transport system needed by another, new city state which is being created – at a location some distance away. Kate is on

leave for the final trimester of her pregnancy, the birth, and several months thereafter. Rob is the principal lead, the principal manager, of this project.

The work team, as is usual with such projects, has two team leads: Rob, the most experienced person and team leader, and Jason, a junior lead who is expected to become the principal leader on another, future, but similar project. The remaining project members, mostly engineers and mostly young women, have good technical backgrounds and social skills, but have not yet acquired enough breadth of technical expertise nor project experience to become project leads.

Key to this project, there are new algorithms for routing the vehicles through the new city state, and there is new electronic hardware and computer programming to be installed both on the robo-vehicles and in the wayside stations. Extensive computer simulation has been done to test vehicle operation and the safety features of the system. Still, experience with similar projects has shown the need for the system designers and programmers to be on-site for an extended time period when such a new system is installed and certified for public use.

System installation proceeds, and a stream of small design changes and computer program changes have to be made. The team is working overlapping shifts of usually nine hours, sometimes more. Both Rob and Jason are visiting the some dozen robo wayside sites where much of the new equipment is located and where the young engineers are individually stationed – for quick attention to the equipment as anomalies are encountered.

At one site, late one day, when Rob is working with Eileen, an attractive young programmer – she suggests to him that she'd like more attention from him. He ignores her. The next day, as the immediate technical problem is solved, she continues:

Eileen: "Rob, you know – some of us women need to be with a man."

Then, before he leaves to check on another robo site:

Eileen: "My pucky's aren't yucky."

At this point Rob feels he has to respond. Rob reasons that since he wouldn't be willing to tell his wife about what he's being asked to do, he shouldn't do it.

Rob: "I appreciate your interest in me. But I'm married, and even though you are extremely attractive, I won't cheat on my wife. And I think you know she is pregnant with my child. Please, I'd rather you not tempt me."

Eileen is used to getting her way, and she has never been turned down this directly. She is seriously miffed. That evening, after her shift ends, she meets with two of the other lady engineers on the project.

Debra: "Well, how did it go? Are you and Rob going to spend a bit of time together?"

Eileen: Her face is red with barely suppressed anger. "Hell no! Can you believe it – that horse's ass turned me down – said he 'wasn't going to cheat on his wife.' He told me not to bother him again!"

Dana: "Wow! What Gaul. Are you going to let him get away with that?"

Eileen: "No. I really want to hurt this creep. Will you all help me?"

Debra: Turning to Eileen. "What's your game?"

Eileen: "Let's act like Jason is the real boss on this project. Let's go to Jason with every project work issue and detail we can, and let's report as much as we can to him. Most of the team members – they're almost all like us – will go along. And why don't several of you ladies approach this jerk? I'll bet he'll turn you down also."

Dana: "Good plan. Let's pass this on to the others"
They will do so.

Debra: "We know several of the other ladies that Jason has been intimate with. Let's start with them."

Project work continues. Word travels fast among the ladies. Most of them sense the hostility Eileen now has to Rob and know the reason why. Several make an attempt at Rob and, as expected, get rejected. Rob does not ever tell his wife about these encounters because he does not want her to worry about what's going on at work. Nor does he tell the Human Relations (HR) department in the institute where they all work.

Jason, on the other hand, has responded to, and continues to respond to these ladies' approaches as they expect males to do. Jason is on their favored list, and Rob gets tagged as an oddball and as a male that women shouldn't pay attention to. With encouragement from Eileen most of the ladies avoid, whenever possible, asking for Rob's help or reporting to him – instead they go to Jason for help and report to him. Jason quickly becomes the evident day-to-day leader of the project.

The project completes. As is usual, HR canvasses the people who participated in the project to determine the effectiveness of the team leaders. Jason gets a very

favorable rating. Rob is judged as inadequate. Rob's wife delivers a baby boy, and in a few months she will be able to rejoin the Institute as an active member.

As luck would have it, she will be assigned to a project led by Jason and will report directly to him. This project will use many of the young ladies, including Eileen, that were assigned to the project her husband Rob ostensibly led, and the team will spend significant amounts of time at a remote installation site. Rob will be on leave, and will stay home to tend to the newborn.

Not satisfied with wrecking Rob's career, Eileen wants even more revenge, much more. She senses that Rob has not told his wife about the rejected approaches to him, and she knows he has not divulged them to HR. Her deliberate sabotage of Rob as project leader is obviously not known to HR, and she presumes it is not known to his wife. Eileen will now 'work on Kate' to convince her that Jason is a much better and more worthy man than is Rob, and in particular more worthy of siring her second child. The other rejected ladies will, with her prompting, help in the seduction of Kate.

Holidays, 2067

It is the end of year Holidays. It used to combine Christmas and New Year's Day to celebrate the year. It is still a time when family members, often separated by vast distances, come together to enjoy their family closeness, celebrate their lives, and hope their futures are bright.

But for many, something is very different. Many women now have children by different males. The meaning of

family has been expanded, or diminished, as you may wish to judge. Now, what is often arranged for the December holidays is the following.

The woman invites the fathers of her children to visit her and the children. Those males who care to, come do so. (If they have children by many women, they may rotate among them, year by year.) If they have mates, they may bring them, but no children. At the get together, those men who care to, put their names onto a small slip of paper. They fold the paper up into a little nugget and hold onto them until later. After the celebration dinner and general partying are over, the women each receive a cup and sit in a row on one side of the party room. The hostess is at one end. Each of the men will put his nugget into the cup of the woman he wants to sleep with that night.

Now – on this holiday, at this party in Milwaukee, Wisconsin, many men have come with their wives or lady friends, as the case may be. One man, very resentful that he was divorced a year ago by the hostess, has brought his new and very beautiful young wife – just to show he's better than her. He thinks there's no problem. But the hostess knows a very handsome and attractive young doctor. This year that doctor, Johnathan Beker, is here as her companion – he will be part of the choosing at the end of the partying.

The dinner, the cleaning up afterward, and people just talking with one another – have all ended. The women get their cups and sit in a row. The men place their nuggets. Most simply put their nugget into the cup by their wife. However, the young doctor does not put his nugget into the cup of the hostess. In fact none will be placed into her cup.

He places it into the cup of the beautiful young wife, right next to the nugget of her husband. She and the doctor smile at one another. The hostess had introduced them to one another earlier after informing the wife about his worthiness and many talents. The wife and doctor then spent much of the dinner time and the partying afterwards in excited conversation with one another.

Starting first at the hostess end of the row of women, each woman picks up the nugget in her cup, opens it, then decides whether she wants to sleep with the man. If she does, she gets up, walks to him, kisses him gently, then stands beside him, holding his hand.

The hostess has no nugget, so the next lady opens hers. She gets up and goes to the man whose name is on that nugget, who is her husband. When it is the turn of the beautiful, young wife, she opens one of the two nuggets. She, as is her choice, crumples it and throws it away. She opens the other, then gets up and walks over to the young doctor. She hugs him and kisses him passionately, closing her eyes. He places his hands around the small of her back, pulling her closer. He inserts his tongue. She likes it and her body relaxes, her back arches in submission to him. He slowly releases her, removing his tongue. She composes herself, stands beside him, holding his hand. She beams with happiness as she anticipates what will transpire later that evening. Of course, the entire entourage has taken in the drama that has just occurred.

The get-together is over. The couples, and the arrogant man, say their goodbyes and leave. That is, except for the young doctor, Johnathan, and the wife. The hostess shows them her

bedroom and tells them to spend the evening and night there. They do, then leave the next morning to go to his residence. The hostess examines her bed. She cannot help but notice multiple spots where recent female orgasm has taken place.

Only days later, the divorce package is delivered to the now humbled and soon-to-be ex-husband. He does not contest it. He accepts the reality and finality of what has occurred – because of his own arrogance and stupidity. In fact, it would have happened – in some form – anyway, in the near future. The young wife was too good for him.

The doctor and young woman marry and remain married together for the rest of their lives. She tolerates his many affairs – he’s just too good. He’s approached by too many gorgeous women to resist – male urges being what they are. She has a few affairs herself. But all of their many children are his. They remain in love with one another, and both value the family they have formed.

Observer: “Women are now in control – as they ought to be.”

This new Holiday tradition provides an opportunity for couples to reexamine their relationship at year’s end. Is it still meaningful? And if it is not, it then provides a mechanism for change. It also teaches, males primarily, not to take ‘their’ women for granted. It has become a real, widely known and respected opportunity for a male to be rejected with another male taking his place.

A Ladies Biology Meeting, 2070

It is ten years after the **State of the NWO** report from the Northern California Research Institute. The strife suggested in that report, by large numbers of rejected males, has occurred and has become a major security problem. A number of lady researchers at the MIT Biology Labs took that evident problem, described back then by Lihua Chin, very seriously. The solution they sought, in their ten years of subsequent effort, was to find an effective but non-violent way to reduce the number of human males to what is really necessary and to ensure that the quality of those males satisfies the ladies of the NWO. A meeting of interested persons (mostly ladies) is held in a large MIT conference room. It takes the form of two videos produced by the research group.

The first describes a virus containing gel they've created that can be inserted, before intercourse, into the vagina. It has the interesting property that it inhibits the spiral flagella of those sperm that contain the Y-chromosome (which determines that the sex of the embryo will be male). This virus has another interesting property – once it is in the chemical environment of the vagina, it is potent for only a few days. Moreover, it cannot survive in the environment of the uterus (where it could conceivably damage an embryo). Typically, when this gel is used, only ten percent of the male sperm are able to pass through the cervix. This implies that about one out of ten births will be male.

The second movie describes a variation of that virus. This virus discriminates, or you might say filters, not only on the basis of the Y-chromosome, but also against a spectrum of

characteristics in males that female humans find objectionable. This virus can be produced with different filtering profiles – one type, for instance, will only permit mobility in sperm coded for tall, hazel eyed, light-brown haired males with appealing facial profiles and ample male parts.

A discussion among the ladies follows.

Lady 1: “Why bother with the second virus? Why not just get impregnated by a male with the right characteristics?”

Researcher: “Because such a desirable male may have, for a desired characteristic, a recessive allele for a different characteristic than the one that is evident in him. 50% of his sperm will contain that undesired allele. This filtering takes sperm with such opposing characteristics out of the running, so to speak.”

The researcher continues.

Researcher: “Keep in mind, the child, if it’s a male, isn’t necessarily going to look like him – because your genes are paired with his. But his contribution to the child will have the genes corresponding to what you wanted in him!”

Lady 2: “What can go wrong if we use this stuff? Can these viruses cause birth defects, or damage other body tissue?”

Researcher: “We are testing in mammals and running mutation and other simulations. So far it looks safe.”

Lady 3: “When and where can we get this stuff?”

Researcher: “We’re working on that with the pharmaceutical companies.”

Lady 4: “How do you think the boys are going to react to this?”

Researcher: “I haven’t the slightest idea. But it’s our bodies, and we have the right to use this stuff as we wish.”

99% Could Have, but Didn't, 2075

Vanessa and Kirsten meet per schedule at a private golf course in the Washington, DC City State to discuss world events in a casual way. This time they pontificate on the Great Cleansing and the NWO which now appears fully accomplished.

Vanessa: “Why weren’t the benefits, the products of the increasingly potent automation, shared with the 99%?”

Kirsten: “The ruling males didn’t want the 99% to have the freedom to dominate and outdo them. In such a secure and abundant society, many of the 99% would have become innovators and established enterprises competing against their own. With a Universal Basic Income, many lower class males would have gained the self-confidence and stature to outdo them in competition for the more attractive women. Without their considerable economic and institutional advantage over the 99%, the upper class would have experienced the contempt they showed for the lower class when they had the upper hand.”

Vanessa: “Why did they do the ‘cleansing?’ Did they have to?”

Kirsten thinks for a half minute before responding.

Kirsten: “I think some of us would say they had to. There were too many people. And the vast majority were too irrational, and potentially too dangerous, not only to us, but also to the planet and all other life. Since our class could not share the benefits of automation with them, it was inevitable that they would fall into deep poverty and desperation – which necessarily leads to insurrection and the threat of revolution.”

Kirsten pauses for a few seconds.

Kirsten: “So our class did this out of fear. Just as we dared not share the fruits of automation with the 99%, our class simply could not let our control of government and society be destroyed. If that’s correct, we killed nearly nine billion people because we were afraid not to!

Vanessa: “When they found out the inhabitants of the city states were immunized from the virus, and therefore, that the upper class actually created and deliberately spread the virus – why didn’t they storm the city states?”

Kirsten: “Our agents among them told them that a moat, so to speak, of virus infected material surrounded the city states, and that, anyway, there were very few doses of vaccine in the city states.”

Vanessa: “Is there any way they could they have stopped us?”

Kirsten: “You might argue the 99% could have prevented what we did, simply so and peaceably – by organizing themselves, in the 2010’s or 2020’s, to take control of public matters – just the way we have done. They should have recognized that their main source of information, the mass media, was owned and controlled by us, that the information was biased to manipulate them – but they didn’t. We came to own virtually all the industrial and agricultural property, whose functioning was vital to them. This was absolutely stupid of them. And they allowed us to pursue, at their tax paying expense, a horrifically large military – obviously configured for imperial, not defensive, not democratic, purposes. Again, not a significant murmur of outrage from these ‘common folk.’ Some people back then did try to get the 99% to organize itself. There were books describing

exactly how to organize for real democracy. These were ignored. No sensible, practical organization of the people to actually govern ever took hold. It seems the common people were convinced they were too different from one another, that the different ethnic and social groups could not get along, could not agree on the facts, and could not build a sufficient common ground of governing policies. It seems to me this is evidence the eliminated lower classes were, in fact, deficient – not capable of governing – and thus unsuitable to manage civilization in technological times.”

Kirsten: “There is yet another reason for what we did. Our class, the world over, has historically been able, and often quick, to engage in violence, in circumstances where the consequence would be huge numbers of dead and vast destruction. The intoxication of having that degree of power is exhilarating. So maybe this supreme act of contempt for the mass of humanity was simply the desire to commit it, then wallow in the thrill of getting away with it!”

Vanessa: “Don’t you think it was immoral? Think of all the killing of children, of women.”

Kirsten: “Is it moral that lions and tigers kill and eat the lesser animals? Or that these cats kill hyenas – largely to diminish the threat to their cubs and to their own food supply? And, throughout known history, how did the human tribes we descend from deal with other tribes? By subjugating or exterminating them – and seizing their more attractive females for their own reproductive use. Mother nature habitually seeks the elimination of whomever has not the substance of survival – being neither useful nor having the means to protect themselves.”

Vanessa: “What we females are doing, to reduce the male population to what we feel is a manageable level, amounts to another “cleansing.” Do you think the powerful males who arranged for the Cleansing of the 99% anticipated this?”

Kirsten: “I doubt it.”

Vanessa: “Whatever the reason or morality for any of this, I’m not going to lose sleep over it. Let’s just be damned sure we don’t ever do this again. Maintenance of a stable society, decentralization of power, adequate relationships between one another ensuring we cooperate and not fight – is and must continue to be our top priority.”

Kirsten: “I wholeheartedly agree. I recall the saying: The price of liberty (actually existence) is eternal vigilance.”

The Golden Rule, 2080

The NWO isn’t perfect. But what do you expect? The emotions that drive humans to build and invent – are part and parcel to the emotions driving competitive reproduction. Injustice, cheating, and theft are part of human behavior. But sometimes, there is constructive collaboration for the collective good. Humans march on. Hopefully for a long, long time.

Wisdom says: “The Golden Rule: Those who wish to live forever, through children that are theirs, must govern. There are no exceptions.”

EPILOGUE

For those readers who are interested, I wanted to explain why I wrote this little book – my first attempt at fiction.

I had written several books (not published, but available over the internet) describing how we ‘ordinary people’ could organize to bring about real democracy – which I believe is the only way we can get justice and fairness into our public life. Informal reviews indicated these would be flops – Americans seem to feel real democracy is impossible, else not desirable. With the encouragement of my wonderful daughter, a PhD student at UC Berkeley, I began to think a SciFi book would be better received, one which showed what could happen in a non-democratic society quickly incorporating sophisticated technology. And as a byproduct of the effort, it led me to ponder how woman-man relationships might evolve in a highly automated civilization where women truly become free of economic dependence upon men. This inspired the kaleidoscope of speculations and scenarios in the New World Order section. That section of this book is intended, in part, to provoke you to ponder relationships in a highly automated future.

I truly believe that if most people continue to ignore their responsibility to rationally and effectively participate in public self-governance – in real democracy – the story told here suggests something of what could be the human future. It seems to me that you and I, the 99%, have but some ten or so years, at most, to take control, to responsibly govern, to build genuine democracy. If we don’t, surveillance and

mind manipulation of us, by the 0.01%, will be so total that meaningful public action will become highly improbable.

Did and do I have prejudices (that were revealed herein)? Yes, I do – some about which people are attractive and which are not, some about religion, and some about politics. But in my personal life, I try to respect the innate rights of others.

I came down pretty hard on the CIA and local police. If my treatment, early in the book, of the DCI offended you, may I suggest reading Chalmers Johnson's '**Blowback**' and his other books. (He's ex-CIA.) The CIA and military are not the highly moral institutions Americans think they are. And regarding my presumed nasty police behavior in the late 2020's and beyond – ask yourself: How would you motivate a police force tasked to suppress a hapless population?

Furthermore, my treatment of the Chinese government and military will seem too favorable to most readers. While I don't view the Chinese system as what humanity should adopt for the future, it has lifted many hundreds of millions of Chinese out of poverty. It seems to me the current Chinese system, using and exploiting the universal instincts of capitalist enterprise – while orchestrating macro economic activity to accelerate industrialization – does compare favorably against the current US system which primarily promotes the selfish interests of America's ruling, corporate class.

I really wish for humanity a future, highly democratic system of governance which oversees, and orchestrates, a mostly publicly owned automated industrial system – coupled to a significant entrepreneurial component which

ensures rapid inclusion of scientific discovery and imaginative creativity into that industrial system.

You might also ask: What's the main reason for sex in the story? I used it to try to get and keep the attention of readers – just like I've seen it used in movies, in many books, and in advertising. With the Sky leaves Jeff scenes, I wanted to send a message to naively self-assured technical people – that in the fast approaching future – their male children can easily lose their beautiful lady partners – should they continue to allow power over people to remain in the hands of an elite. Finally, I wanted to make clear that young males of the lower classes need to learn the proper attitude and skills necessary for effective conduct of romance and sex. This includes learning how to behave like men and how to attract and give pleasure to women. I want my grandsons to understand this when they become teenagers.

What's my background? What did I do for a living? For over forty years I was an electrical engineer and computer programmer. I created a lot of automation – the benefit of which went almost totally to the wealthy owners of industrial property – not to the general population.

How do I identify with the characters and behavior depicted in the book? Probably mostly with John Michner. Henrietta is my beautiful, practical, and intelligent real wife of many, many decades. But I see into, and have the feelings of, almost every other character.

The message? I've already said it. If 'ordinary' people don't soon start paying attention to the reality of unjust and dangerous concentration of wealth and power in America, they can kiss good bye the existence of any descendants of

theirs in the not too distant future. I'm probably wrong about many, if not most, particulars in the story – but not about the misuse of technology by the US ruling class, nor their contempt for us, the '99%.'

I wish this little book had existed for me to read when I was thirteen or fourteen years of age. In any case, I've been told the story is interesting and something to think about. I hope you found that to be true.

Robert Mare

ICON ATTRIBUTIONS

The following are references from where I found the images forming the 27 ‘icons’ on this books covers. All are cropped and sized. The majority were from pixabay.com which I found easiest to use. A few icons come from my own photos. I have data sets, including ‘screen shots’ documenting what permissible use and licensing issues appeared pertinent. These attributions were collected Jan-Feb. 2021.

1. **U. of Illinois Campus**, Student Union and central campus. <https://pixabay.com/photos/university-college-campus-main-2540633>
2. **Golden Gate Bridge Suspension**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/golden-gate-bridge-suspension-1596161/>
3. **Park Bench**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/rose-garden-away-bank-lavender-4336753/>
4. **KGB_HQ**, https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f6/Lubyanka_KGB.jp. Author Ikar.us (talk). License: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Creative_Commons
5. **NSA Data Turret**, I think this is by Jennifer, about 22 Feb. 2021, at: <https://www.flickr.com>.
6. **Midwest Farm**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/wisconsin-landscape-scenic-sky-1809870/>
7. **Meeting Room**, CC0 <https://search.creativecommons.org/photos/1cfd4951-be86-41d1-a84b-94007148a34c>
8. **Printed Circuit Board**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/computer-processor-cpu-chip-4131844/>
9. **Industrial Automation**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/industry-machine-machinery-319580/>

10. **Google Map** of Area In Big City. This is a small portion of the neighborhood where the author grew up.
11. **Cessna Citation Aircraft**, English: Description: Cessna Citation X exterior, Date: 8 June 2012, 03:26:08, Source: Own work, author: JetRequest.com. CC-BY-SA-3.0. This file is licensed under the [Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en) license: <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en>
12. **Cessna Citation Cockpit**, https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/75/Cockpit_N750GF_Cessna_Citation_750X_%2846085646234%29.jpg, Description: At Gloucestershire Airport, Date: 19 January 2019, 14:06, Source: Cockpit N750GF Cessna Citation 750X, Author: James from Cheltenham, Gloucestershire.
13. **San Francisco Building**, <https://www.pexels.com/photo/high-rise-buildings-715347/> Photo by Pille Kirsi from Pexels.
14. **Buckingham Fountain** (in Grant Park, Chicago), <https://pixabay.com/photos/chicago-illinois-city-urban-1629599/>
15. **Doctor's Exam Room**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/doctors-office-doctor-office-1944117/>
16. **Mega Church TV Station**, By Dreammaker182 - Own work, PublicDomain, <https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/index.php?curid=2088281>
17. **Grizzly Bear**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/grizzly-wild-bear-predator-3821295/>
18. **Chinese Flag**, <https://pixabay.com/vectors/china-flag-country-chinese-4875007/>

19. **Vaccine Injection**, https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/9f/Shots_for_all%2C_Vaccines_keep_Airmen_healthy_150323-F-IT851-010.jpg
20. **Chinese Jet Fighter**, <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Chinese-j-11.jpg>. An armed Chinese Shenyang J-11 fighter jet flies near a U.S. Navy Boeing P-8A Poseidon patrol aircraft over the South China Sea about 220 km east of Hainan Island in international airspace. This image was released by the United States Navy with the ID: 140819-N-ZZ999-113.
21. **Ebola Virus**, "Ebola virus" by CDC Global Health is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Photos – 14723720857_bbb1ac06a5_b__Ebola_Virus.jpg. To view a copy of this license, visit: <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0>
22. **Ampoules**, Image on pixabay.com from Ulrike Leone. <https://pixabay.com/photos/ampoules-vaccination-vaccine-2045833/>
23. **Ebola Protection Suits**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/ ebola-isolation-infection-virus-549471/>
24. **Numerous City Fires**, This was heavily cropped from: bonFiresFromSpace2.jpg. I've tried hard to find where the original file came from to reference the author. Can't find.
25. **Bulldozer**, <https://pixabay.com/photos/demolish-bulldozer-tearing-498443/>
26. **Museum Attendees**, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Vladimir_Akulov_Exhibitions_in_Minsk_Modern_Arts_Museum_30.07.2013_03.JPG
27. **Gym**, Photograph made by the author of this book.

